Table of Contents

Volume 1

ARTICLE 1 [REV] GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

U.C.C. § 1-101 [Rev] Short Titles
  § 1-101:2 [Rev] Organization of the UCC

U.C.C. § 1-102 [Rev] Scope of Article
  § 1-102:1 [Rev] Applicability of Article 1

  § 1-103:1 [Rev] The UCC as a “Code”
  § 1-103:2 [Rev] The Code concept
  § 1-103:3 [Rev] Nominal and historical considerations
  § 1-103:4 [Rev] Systematic considerations
  § 1-103:5 [Rev] Comprehensive and preemptive considerations
  § 1-103:6 [Rev] Methodology implications
  § 1-103:7 [Rev] Analogy
  § 1-103:8 [Rev] Persuasive and precedential value of decided cases
  § 1-103:9 [Rev] Conclusion
  § 1-103:10 [Rev] Judicial use of methodology and interpretive aids
  § 1-103:11 [Rev] Liberal construction to promote underlying policies
  § 1-103:12 [Rev] Application of supplemental principles of law

U.C.C. § 1-104 [Rev] Construction Against Implied Repeal
  § 1-104:1 [Rev] In general

U.C.C. § 1-105 [Rev] Severability
  § 1-105:1 [Rev] In general

U.C.C. § 1-106 [Rev] Use of Singular and Plural; Gender
§ 2-102:7 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-103 Definitions and Index of Definitions
§ 2-103:1 Buyer and seller
§ 2-103:2 Good faith
§ 2-103:3 Receipt and delivery
§ 2-103:4 Index of definitions
§ 2-103:5 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-104 Definitions: “Merchant”; “Between Merchants”; “Financing Agency”
§ 2-104:1 Merchant—Defined
§ 2-104:2 Between merchants
§ 2-104:3 Financing agency
§ 2-104:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
§ 2-105:1 Goods—Inclusions
§ 2-105:2 —Exclusions
§ 2-105:3 Future goods; transferability
§ 2-105:4 Lot and commercial unit
§ 2-105:5 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
§ 2-106:1 Contract; agreement
§ 2-106:2 Sale; contract for sale; present sale
§ 2-106:3 Conforming goods or conduct
§ 2-106:4 Termination and cancellation
§ 2-106:5 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-107 Goods to Be Severed from Realty: Recording
§ 2-107:1 Overview
§ 2-107:2 Goods affixed to real estate-Seller to sever
§ 2-107:3 Goods affixed to real estate-Goods capable of severance without material harm
§ 2-107:4 Goods affixed to real estate-Intersection with real property records
§ 2-107:5 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

PART 2 FORM, FORMATION AND READJUSTMENT OF CONTRACT
U.C.C. § 2-201 Formal Requirements; Statute of Frauds
§ 2-201:1 Concept and background
§ 2-201:2 Applicability
§ 2-201:3 Satisfying the rule with a writing signed by party to be charged
## Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-201:4</td>
<td>Exception—Merchant confirmations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-201:5</td>
<td>—Specially manufactured goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-201:6</td>
<td>—Admissions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-201:7</td>
<td>—Part performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-201:8</td>
<td>—Nonstatutory exception—Estoppel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-201:9</td>
<td>—Effect of noncompliance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-201:10</td>
<td>2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### U.C.C. § 2-202 Final Written Expression: Parol or Extrinsic Evidence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-202:1</td>
<td>Background and concepts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-202:2</td>
<td>Applicability—Final expression of terms of an agreement in a writing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-202:3</td>
<td>Evidence of a prior agreement or contemporaneous oral agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-202:4</td>
<td>Evidence of course of dealing, usage of trade, or course of performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-202:5</td>
<td>Evidence of additional terms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-202:6</td>
<td>2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### U.C.C. § 2-203 Seals Inoperative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-203:1</td>
<td>Law of sealed instruments ineffective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-203:2</td>
<td>2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### U.C.C. § 2-204 Formation in General

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-204:1</td>
<td>Forming a contract for sale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-204:2</td>
<td>Moment of contract formation unimportant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-204:3</td>
<td>Open terms and contract formation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-204:4</td>
<td>2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### U.C.C. § 2-205 Firm Offers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-205:1</td>
<td>Background</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-205:2</td>
<td>Elements of a firm offer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-205:3</td>
<td>Period of irrevocability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-205:4</td>
<td>2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### U.C.C. § 2-206 Offer and Acceptance in Formation of Contract

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-206:1</td>
<td>Generally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-206:2</td>
<td>Acceptance of offer in any manner and medium reasonable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-206:3</td>
<td>Offer to buy for prompt or current shipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-206:4</td>
<td>Acceptance by beginning performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-206:5</td>
<td>2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### U.C.C. § 2-207 Additional Terms in Acceptance or Confirmation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-207:1</td>
<td>Background</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-207:2</td>
<td>Definite and seasonable expression of acceptance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-207:3</td>
<td>Treatment of additional or different terms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2-207:4</td>
<td>Confirmations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 2-207:5 Conduct of both parties forms contract
§ 2-207:6 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-208 Course of Performance or Practical Construction
  [Reserved]
§ 2-208:1 Course of performance: generally
U.C.C. § 2-209 Modification, Rescission and Waiver
  § 2-209:1 Agreements to modify
  § 2-209:2 No oral modification clauses
  § 2-209:3 Application of statute of frauds to modifications
  § 2-209:4 Waiver
  § 2-209:5 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-210 Delegation of Performance; Assignment of Rights
  § 2-210:1 General recognition of assignment of rights and
delegation of duties
  § 2-210:2 Delegation of duties
  § 2-210:3 Assignment of rights
  § 2-210:4 Construction of clauses concerning assignment of
  rights and delegation of duties
  § 2-210:5 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
PART 3 GENERAL OBLIGATION AND CONSTRUCTION OF
CONTRACT
U.C.C. § 2-301 General Obligations of Parties
  § 2-301:1 In general
  § 2-301:2 2003 and 2005 Amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-302 Unconscionable Contract or Clause
  § 2-302:1 Overview
  § 2-302:2 Process for finding unconscionability
  § 2-302:3 Procedural unconscionability
  § 2-302:4 Substantive unconscionability
  § 2-302:5 Remedies for unconscionability
  § 2-302:6 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-303 Allocation or Division of Risks
  § 2-303:1 Dividing risks and burden by agreement
  § 2-303:2 2003 and 2005 Amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-304 Price Payable in Money, Goods, Realty, or
  Otherwise
  § 2-304:1 Relationship to scope of Article 2
  § 2-304:2 Exchanging goods for goods
  § 2-304:3 Exchanging goods for real estate
  § 2-304:4 Exchanging goods for services or other
  compensation
  § 2-304:5 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
xx
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 2-317:1 In general
§ 2-317:2 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-318 Third-Party Beneficiaries of Warranties Express or Implied
§ 2-318:1 Background
§ 2-318:2 Theory of extension of warranties
§ 2-318:3 Three alternative approaches to extension of warranties
§ 2-318:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-319 F.O.B. and F.A.S. Terms
§ 2-319:1 Shipping terms generally
§ 2-319:2 F.O.B.
§ 2-319:3 F.A.S.
§ 2-319:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-320 C.I.F. and C. & F. Terms
§ 2-320:1 Shipping terms generally
§ 2-320:2 C.I.F.
§ 2-320:3 C. & F.
§ 2-320:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
§ 2-321:1 Shipping terms generally
§ 2-321:2 Variant C.I.F. or C. & F. shipping terms
§ 2-321:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-322 Delivery “Ex-Ship”
§ 2-322:1 Shipping terms generally
§ 2-322:2 Ex-ship
§ 2-322:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-323 Form of Bill of Lading Required in Overseas Shipment; “Overseas”
§ 2-323:1 Shipping terms generally
§ 2-323:2 Bills of lading in overseas shipment
§ 2-323:3 Bills of lading in a set in overseas shipment
§ 2-323:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-324 “No Arrival, No Sale” Term
§ 2-324:1 Shipping terms generally
§ 2-324:2 “No arrival, no sale” term
§ 2-324:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-325 “Letter of Credit” Term; “Confirmed Credit”
§ 2-325:1 In general
§ 2-325:2 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-326 Sale on Approval and Sale or Return; Rights of Creditors

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 2-326:1 Consignments under Revised Article 9
§ 2-326:2 Sale on approval
§ 2-326:3 Sale or return
§ 2-326:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

U.C.C. § 2-327 Special Incidents of Sale on Approval and Sale or Return
§ 2-327:1 Sale on approval
§ 2-327:2 Sale or return
§ 2-327:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

U.C.C. § 2-328 Sale by Auction
§ 2-328:1 Formation of contract by auction
§ 2-328:2 Auctions with and without reserve
§ 2-328:3 Fraud at auctions
§ 2-328:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

Volume 2

PART 4 TITLE, CREDITORS AND GOOD FAITH PURCHASERS

U.C.C. § 2-401 Passing of Title; Reservation for Security; Limited Application of this Section
§ 2-401:1 Relationship of title to buyer and seller rights under sales contract
§ 2-401:2 Title passage and identification of the goods to the sales contract; title retention
§ 2-401:3 Title passage and seller’s completion of performance
§ 2-401:4 Title passage when goods are delivered without being moved
§ 2-401:5 Title passage and rejection of the goods or revocation of acceptance
§ 2-401:6 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

U.C.C. § 2-402 Rights of Seller’s Creditors Against Sold Goods
§ 2-402:1 Background
§ 2-402:2 Seller’s creditors’ rights as against buyer of goods
§ 2-402:3 Effect of seller’s fraudulent retention of possession of goods
§ 2-402:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

U.C.C. § 2-403 Power to Transfer; Good Faith Purchase of Goods; “Entrusting”
§ 2-403:1 Background
§ 2-403:2 Seller’s ability to transfer rights
§ 2-403:3 When seller has voidable title
§ 2-403:4 Entrusting goods to the seller
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>§ 2-403:5 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**PART 5 PERFORMANCE**
**U.C.C. § 2-501 Insurable Interest in Goods; Manner of Identification of Goods**
- § 2-501:1 Identification
- § 2-501:2 Special property and insurable interest
- § 2-501:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

**U.C.C. § 2-502 Buyer’s Right to Goods on Seller’s Repudiation, Failure to Deliver, or Insolvency**
- § 2-502:1 Justification for prepaying buyer’s right to obtain the goods from the seller
- § 2-502:2 When prepaying buyer qualifies for right to obtain the goods from the seller
- § 2-502:3 Rights of seller’s creditors and buyers to obtain goods as against rights of prepaying buyer
- § 2-502:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

**U.C.C. § 2-503 Manner of Seller’s Tender of Delivery**
- § 2-503:1 Tender of delivery defined
- § 2-503:2 Tender of delivery in general
- § 2-503:3 Tender of delivery in shipment and destination contracts
- § 2-503:4 Tender of delivery when goods held by bailee and to be delivered without being moved
- § 2-503:5 Tender of required documents
- § 2-503:6 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

**U.C.C. § 2-504 Shipment by Seller**
- § 2-504:1 Tender of delivery in shipment contracts
- § 2-504:2 Consequence of seller’s failure to comply
- § 2-504:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

**U.C.C. § 2-505 Seller’s Shipment under Reservation**
- § 2-505:1 Seller’s security interest through shipment under reservation
- § 2-505:2 Effect of shipment under reservation
- § 2-505:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

**U.C.C. § 2-506 Rights of Financing Agency**
- § 2-506:1 Subrogation to rights of shipper
- § 2-506:2 Right to reimbursement
- § 2-506:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

**U.C.C. § 2-507 Effect of Seller’s Tender; Delivery on Condition**
- § 2-507:1 Tender of delivery condition to buyer’s duty
- § 2-507:2 Conditional delivery; reclamation
- § 2-507:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
U.C.C. § 2-508 Cure by Seller of Improper Tender or Delivery; Replacement
§ 2-508:1 Seller’s right to cure as a limitation on buyer’s right to reject
§ 2-508:2 Cure within the time specified for seller’s performance
§ 2-508:3 Cure when time for seller’s performance has expired
§ 2-508:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-509 Risk of Loss in the Absence of Breach
§ 2-509:1 Risk of loss in general
§ 2-509:2 Risk of loss allocated by agreement
§ 2-509:3 Risk of loss allocated depending on mode of delivery
§ 2-509:4 Risk of loss in sale on approval and sale or return transactions
§ 2-509:5 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-510 Effect of Breach on Risk of Loss
§ 2-510:1 Risk of loss when seller is in breach
§ 2-510:2 Risk of loss when buyer is in breach
§ 2-510:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-511 Tender of Payment by Buyer; Payment by Check
§ 2-511:1 Tender of payment condition to seller’s duty
§ 2-511:2 Sufficient tender of payment
§ 2-511:3 Payment by check conditional
§ 2-511:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-512 Payment by Buyer Before Inspection
§ 2-512:1 Contract to pay prior to inspection
§ 2-512:2 Effect of payment before inspection
§ 2-512:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-513 Buyer’s Right to Inspection of Goods
§ 2-513:1 Buyer’s right to inspect before payment or acceptance
§ 2-513:2 Agreement to pay before inspection
§ 2-513:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-514 When Documents Deliverable on Acceptance; When on Payment
§ 2-514:1 Duty of presenting entity to surrender documents to the buyer
§ 2-514:2 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-515 Preserving Evidence of Goods in Dispute
§ 2-515:1 Preserving evidence of nonconformity
§ 2-515:2 Using third-party inspections or survey
§ 2-515:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## PART 6 BREACH, REPUDIATION AND EXCUSE

U.C.C. § 2-601 Buyer’s Rights on Improper Delivery
- § 2-601:1 Perfect tender rule—in general
- § 2-601:2 Perfect tender rule—limitations
- § 2-601:3 Buyer’s options as to nonconforming goods or tender of delivery
- § 2-601:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

U.C.C. § 2-602 Manner and Effect of Rightful Rejection
- § 2-602:1 Manner of rejection
- § 2-602:2 Effect of rejection
- § 2-602:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

U.C.C. § 2-603 Merchant Buyer’s Duties as to Rightfully Rejected Goods
- § 2-603:1 Merchant buyer’s obligation in addition to reasonable care
- § 2-603:2 Merchant buyer’s reimbursement and commission
- § 2-603:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

U.C.C. § 2-604 Buyer’s Options as to Salvage of Rightfully Rejected Goods
- § 2-604:1 Relationship to Section 2-602 and Section 2-603
- § 2-604:2 Merchant and nonmerchant buyer’s options
- § 2-604:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

U.C.C. § 2-605 Waiver of Buyer’s Objections by Failure to Particularize
- § 2-605:1 Waiver of objections to goods
- § 2-605:2 Waiver of objections to documents
- § 2-605:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

U.C.C. § 2-606 What Constitutes Acceptance of Goods
- § 2-606:1 Concept and effect of acceptance of goods
- § 2-606:2 Acceptance of goods through signification
- § 2-606:3 Acceptance of goods through failure to make an effective rejection
- § 2-606:4 Acceptance of goods through action inconsistent with seller’s ownership
- § 2-606:5 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

U.C.C. § 2-607 Effect of Acceptance; Notice of Breach; Burden of Establishing Breach After Acceptance; Notice of Claim or Litigation to Person Answerable Over
- § 2-607:1 Overview
- § 2-607:2 Effect of acceptance of goods
- § 2-607:3 Notice of breach in order to preserve remedy
- § 2-607:4 Notice of infringement litigation

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018  xxvii
## Table of Contents

§ 2-615:4 Buyer’s excuse
§ 2-615:5 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
§ 2-616 Procedure on Notice Claiming Excuse
§ 2-616:1 Buyer’s options upon seller’s notification under Section 2-615
§ 2-616:2 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

### PART 7 REMEDIES

U.C.C. § 2-701 Remedies for Breach of Collateral Contracts Not Impaired
§ 2-701:1 In general
§ 2-701:2 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

U.C.C. § 2-702 Seller’s Remedies on Discovery of Buyer’s Insolvency
§ 2-702:1 Delivery for cash upon buyer’s insolvency
§ 2-702:2 Seller’s ability to reclaim the goods upon buyer’s insolvency
§ 2-702:3 Priority of seller’s right to reclaim as against other claims to the goods
§ 2-702:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

U.C.C. § 2-703 Seller’s Remedies in General
§ 2-703:1 Overview and theory of seller’s remedies for buyer’s breach
§ 2-703:2 Seller’s ability to withhold the goods
§ 2-703:3 Seller’s ability to cancel the contract
§ 2-703:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

U.C.C. § 2-704 Seller’s Right to Identify Goods to the Contract Notwithstanding Breach or to Salvage Unfinished Goods
§ 2-704:1 Identification of goods to contract after buyer’s breach
§ 2-704:2 Seller’s options regarding unfinished goods
§ 2-704:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

U.C.C. § 2-705 Seller’s Stoppage of Delivery in Transit or Otherwise
§ 2-705:1 Seller’s right to withhold or stop delivery
§ 2-705:2 When seller’s right to stop delivery expires
§ 2-705:3 Mechanics of stopping delivery of goods in possession of bailee
§ 2-705:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2

U.C.C. § 2-706 Seller’s Resale Including Contract for Resale
§ 2-706:1 Using the resale price to measure seller’s damages for buyer’s breach
§ 2-706:2 Mechanics of a proper resale

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 2-706:3 Rights of good faith buyer at the resale
§ 2-706:4 Resale by a person in the position of the seller or an aggrieved buyer
§ 2-706:5 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-707 “Person in the Position of a Seller”
§ 2-707:1 Defining a person in the position of a seller
§ 2-707:2 Remedies of a person in the position of a seller
§ 2-707:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-708 Seller’s Damages for Nonacceptance or Repudiation
§ 2-708:1 Using the market price to measure seller’s damages for buyer’s breach
§ 2-708:2 Seller’s lost profit and unreimbursed reliance expenses
§ 2-708:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-709 Action for the Price
§ 2-709:1 Seller’s ability to recover the price
§ 2-709:2 Relationship to other remedies for buyer’s breach
§ 2-709:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-710 Seller’s Incidental Damages
§ 2-710:1 Definition of incidental damages
§ 2-710:2 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-711 Buyer’s Remedies in General; Buyer’s Security Interest in Rejected Goods
§ 2-711:1 Overview and theory of buyer’s remedies for seller’s breach
§ 2-711:2 Buyer’s ability to obtain the goods
§ 2-711:3 Buyer’s ability to cancel the contract
§ 2-711:4 Buyer’s security interest
§ 2-711:5 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-712 “Cover”; Buyer’s Procurement of Substitute Goods
§ 2-712:1 Using the cover price to measure buyer’s damages for seller’s breach
§ 2-712:2 Making a proper cover transaction
§ 2-712:3 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-713 Buyer’s Damages for Non-Delivery or Repudiation
§ 2-713:1 Using the market price to measure buyer’s damages for seller’s breach
§ 2-713:2 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2
U.C.C. § 2-714 Buyer’s Damages for Breach in Regard to Accepted Goods
§ 2-714:1 Buyer’s entitlement to damages for seller’s breach when buyer accepts goods

xxx
Volume 3

ARTICLE 2A LEASES

PART 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

U.C.C. § 2A-101 Short Title
§ 2A-101:1 Organization and sources of law
§ 2A-101:2 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2A
§ 2A-101:3 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-101:4 History of the 2003 and 2005 amendments
§ 2A-101:5 Overview of 2003 and 2005 Article 2A amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-102 Scope
§ 2A-102:1 Basic Scope of Article 2A
§ 2A-102:2 Mixed Transactions
§ 2A-102:3 Choice of Law
§ 2A-102:4 Text and comment amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-103 Definitions and Index of Definitions
§ 2A-103:1 In General
§ 2A-103:2 Consumer lease
§ 2A-103:3 Finance lease defined
§ 2A-103:4 Consequences of finance lease treatment
§ 2A-103:5 Goods defined
§ 2A-103:6 Mixed goods transactions
§ 2A-103:7 Good faith
§ 2A-103:8 Index of definitions
## Table of Contents

- § 2A-103:9 Text and comment amendments
- § 2A-103:10 Summation of 2003 and 2005 amendments to U.C.C. § 2A-103

**U.C.C. § 2A-104 Leases Subject to Other Law**
- § 2A-104:1 Other laws to which leases are subject
- § 2A-104:2 Other related laws
- § 2A-104:3 Text and comment amendments
- § 2A-104:4 Discussion of amendments

**U.C.C. § 2A-105 Territorial Application of Article to Goods Covered by Certificate of Title**
- § 2A-105:1 In general
- § 2A-105:2 Text and comment amendments
- § 2A-105:3 Discussion of amendments

**U.C.C. § 2A-106 Limitation on Power of Parties to Consumer Lease to Choose Applicable Law and Judicial Forum**
- § 2A-106:1 In general
- § 2A-106:2 Text and comment amendments
- § 2A-106:3 Discussion of 2003 amendments

**U.C.C. § 2A-107 Waiver or Renunciation of Claim or Right After Default**
- § 2A-107:1 In general
- § 2A-107:2 Waiver and renunciation
- § 2A-107:3 Partial discharge by waiver or renunciation
- § 2A-107:4 Conditional waiver or renunciation
- § 2A-107:5 Delivery
- § 2A-107:6 Text and comment amendments
- § 2A-107:7 Discussion of 2003 amendments

**U.C.C. § 2A-108 Unconscionability**
- § 2A-108:1 Purpose of unconscionability doctrine
- § 2A-108:2 Meaning of unconscionability
- § 2A-108:3 Procedural unconscionability
- § 2A-108:4 Substantive unconscionability
- § 2A-108:5 Limitations on the doctrine of unconscionability
- § 2A-108:6 Applicability to consumer and commercial transactions
- § 2A-108:7 Remedies for unconscionability
- § 2A-108:8 Text and comment amendments
- § 2A-108:9 Discussion of 2003 amendments

**U.C.C. § 2A-109 Option to Accelerate at Will**
- § 2A-109:1 Reasons for and scope of insecurity clauses
- § 2A-109:2 Exercise of insecurity clause
- § 2A-109:3 Text and comment amendments

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 2A-109:4 Discussion of 2003 amendments

PART 2 FORMATION AND CONSTRUCTION OF LEASE CONTRACT

U.C.C. § 2A-201 Statute of Frauds
  § 2A-201:1 Background
  § 2A-201:2 Limitations on lease of goods for payment of $1,000 or more
  § 2A-201:3 —Special manufacturing excluded
  § 2A-201:4 Satisfying memorandum requirements
  § 2A-201:5 —Details of the memorandum
  § 2A-201:6 —Letters of confirmation
  § 2A-201:7 —Admissions
  § 2A-201:8 —Part performance
  § 2A-201:9 Estoppel
  § 2A-201:10 Effect of noncompliance
  § 2A-201:11 Text and comment amendments
  § 2A-201:12 Summation of 2003 amendments to U.C.C. § 2A-201

U.C.C. § 2A-202 Final Written Expression: Parol or Extrinsic Evidence
  § 2A-202:1 Background of the parol evidence rule
  § 2A-202:2 Final written (record) agreement
  § 2A-202:3 Terms explained or supplemented by trade usage, course of dealing or course of performance
  § 2A-202:4 Terms explained or supplemented by other evidence
  § 2A-202:5 Text and comment amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-203 Seals Inoperative
  § 2A-203:1 Seals ineffective
  § 2A-203:2 Text and comment amendments
  § 2A-203:3 Summary of 2003 Amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-204 Formation in General
  § 2A-204:1 Form of lease contract unimportant
  § 2A-204:2 Moment of formation not identified
  § 2A-204:3 Contract formed despite missing terms
  § 2A-204:4 Text and comment amendments
  § 2A-204:5 Summary of 2003 amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-205 Firm Offers
  § 2A-205:1 Background
  § 2A-205:2 Elements of a firm offer
  § 2A-205:3 —Writing (Record)
Table of Contents

§ 2A-205:4 — Signing
§ 2A-205:5 — Lease of goods
§ 2A-205:6 — Offer by merchant
§ 2A-205:7 — Term of offer
§ 2A-205:8 Effect of use of offeree’s form
§ 2A-205:9 Considerations in computing time
§ 2A-205:10 Form of firm offer with identical irrevocability and expiration periods
§ 2A-205:11 Form of firm offer with different irrevocability and expiration periods
§ 2A-205:12 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-205:13 Summary of 2003 Amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-206 Offer and Acceptance in Formation of Lease Contract
§ 2A-206:1 Offeror master of offer
§ 2A-206:2 Ambiguous offers
§ 2A-206:3 Unilateral contract trick
§ 2A-206:4 Beginning acceptance problems
§ 2A-206:5 Text and comment amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-207 Course of Performance or Practical Construction
§ 2A-207:1 Course of performance
§ 2A-207:2 — Defined
§ 2A-207:3 — Relationship to other express and implied terms
§ 2A-207:4 Text and comment amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-208 Modification, Rescission and Waiver
§ 2A-208:1 Common-law background
§ 2A-208:2 Validation of good faith modifications without consideration
§ 2A-208:3 — Operation of the rule
§ 2A-208:4 Safeguarding the bargain by the no modification unless in writing (record) term
§ 2A-208:5 — Operation of the rule
§ 2A-208:6 Safeguarding the bargain by the statute of frauds
§ 2A-208:7 Waiver of bargain
§ 2A-208:8 Text and comment amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-209 Lessee Under Finance Lease as Beneficiary of Supply Contract
§ 2A-209:1 Context for the section
§ 2A-209:2 Pass-through of promises and warranties
§ 2A-209:3 Effect of subsequent occurrences
§ 2A-209:4 Text and comment amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-210 Express Warranties
§ 2A-210:1 Rules concerning creation of an express warranty

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 2A-210:2 Nature of express warranty obligation
§ 2A-210:3 Affirmations and promises of fact distinguished from puffing, opinions, and statements of value
§ 2A-210:4 —Not relating to the goods
§ 2A-210:5 —Basis of the bargain test
§ 2A-210:6 ——Actionable affirmation not found
§ 2A-210:7 Descriptions, samples, and models as basis for express warranty
§ 2A-210:8 Limitations on recovery
§ 2A-210:9 —Disclaimers
§ 2A-210:10 —Necessity of lease or privity of contract
§ 2A-210:11 —Lessee misconduct
§ 2A-210:12 Text and comment amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-211 Warranties Against Interference and Against Infringement; Lessee’s Obligation Against Infringement
§ 2A-211:1 Description of warranty against interference
§ 2A-211:2 Scope of lessor’s obligation
§ 2A-211:3 Application of the warranty against interference
§ 2A-211:4 Warranty against infringement
§ 2A-211:5 Contractual terms providing for disclaimer of warranty
§ 2A-211:6 —Evaluation of circumstances surrounding lease
§ 2A-211:7 Curing an imperfect lessor interest
§ 2A-211:8 Remedies for breach of warranty
§ 2A-211:9 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-211:10 Summary of 2003 and 2005 amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-212 Implied Warranty of Merchantability
§ 2A-212:1 Nature of implied warranty of merchantability
§ 2A-212:2 Applicability of implied warranty of merchantability
§ 2A-212:3 —Lease and goods vs. service limitations
§ 2A-212:4 —Reliance
§ 2A-212:5 —Disclaimers and privity limitations
§ 2A-212:6 —Plaintiff’s conduct
§ 2A-212:7 Meaning of “merchantability”
§ 2A-212:8 —Pass without objection in trade under contract description
§ 2A-212:9 —Fair average quality for fungible goods
§ 2A-212:10 —Fit for ordinary purpose, generally
§ 2A-212:11 —Allergies and other particular factors
§ 2A-212:12 —Adequately packaged and labeled
§ 2A-212:13 —Conformity with promises or affirmations of fact on container or label

xxxvi
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-212:14</td>
<td>Relationship between warranty of merchantability and strict liability in tort</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-212:15</td>
<td>Text and comment amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-212:16</td>
<td>Summary of 2003 Amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 2A-213</td>
<td>Implied Warranty of Fitness for Particular Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-213:1</td>
<td>Requirements for implied warranty of fitness for particular purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-213:2</td>
<td>Reason to know requirement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-213:3</td>
<td>Particular purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-213:4</td>
<td>Reliance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-213:5</td>
<td>Other limitations on implied warranty of fitness for particular purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-213:6</td>
<td>Text and comment amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 2A-214</td>
<td>Exclusion or Modification of Warranties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-214:1</td>
<td>Basic purpose of section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-214:2</td>
<td>Disclaiming express warranties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-214:3</td>
<td>Disclaiming implied warranties by agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-214:4</td>
<td>—Words of art approved by statute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-214:5</td>
<td>—By examination of goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-214:6</td>
<td>Disclaiming warranty against interference or infringement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-214:7</td>
<td>Relationship between disclaimers and parol evidence rule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-214:8</td>
<td>Relationship between disclaimers and contractual modification or limitation of remedies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-214:9</td>
<td>Unconscionability limitation on disclaimers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-214:10</td>
<td>—Magnuson Moss Warranty Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-214:11</td>
<td>Text and comment amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-214:12</td>
<td>Summary of 2003 amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 2A-215</td>
<td>Cumulation and Conflict of Warranties Express or Implied</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-215:1</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-215:2</td>
<td>Text and comment amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 2A-216</td>
<td>Third-Party Beneficiaries of Express and Implied Warranties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-216:1</td>
<td>Early history of horizontal, vertical, and diagonal privity limitations on warranty recovery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-216:2</td>
<td>U.C.C. privity limitations on warranty recovery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-216:3</td>
<td>—Alternative A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-216:4</td>
<td>—Alternative B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-216:5</td>
<td>—Alternative C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-216:6</td>
<td>Disclaimers and limitations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 2A-216:7 Text and comment amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-217 Identification
§ 2A-217:1 The concept of identification
§ 2A-217:2 The definition of identification
§ 2A-217:3 Text and comment amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-218 Insurance and Proceeds
§ 2A-218:1 In general
§ 2A-218:2 Text and comment amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-219 Risk of Loss
§ 2A-219:1 Risk of loss in a lease
§ 2A-219:2 Allocating risk or time of passage by agreement
§ 2A-219:3 Time of passage in contracts contemplating transportation by carrier
§ 2A-219:4 Time of passage for goods held by bailee to be delivered without movement
§ 2A-219:5 Time of passage in residual cases
§ 2A-219:6 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-219:7 Summary of 2003 amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-220 Effect of Default on Risk of Loss
§ 2A-220:1 In general
§ 2A-220:2 Lessor defaults by failing to tender or deliver conforming goods
§ 2A-220:3 Lessor defaults by delivering nonconforming goods; Lessee thereafter rightfully revokes acceptance
§ 2A-220:4 Lessee defaults or repudiates by refusing to accept conforming goods
§ 2A-220:5 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-220:6 Summary of 2003 amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-221 Casualty to Identified Goods
§ 2A-221:1 Background
§ 2A-221:2 Goods identified to the contract when it is made
§ 2A-221:3 Without fault requirement of excuse of impossibility
§ 2A-221:4 Effect of delivery and risk of loss on the doctrine of impossibility
§ 2A-221:5 Partial loss
§ 2A-221:6 Assumption of risk
§ 2A-221:7 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-221:8 Summary of 2003 amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-222 Legal Recognition of Electronic Contracts, Records and Signatures
§ 2A-222:1 Legal effect of electronic communications
§ 2A-222:2 Overriding effect of Electronic Signatures in
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-223:1</td>
<td>Signing and sending and electronic record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-224:1</td>
<td>Receipt of electronic records</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PART 3 EFFECT OF LEASE CONTRACT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2A-301:1</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-301:2</td>
<td>Lease agreement as contractual base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-301:3</td>
<td>2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-302:1</td>
<td>Diminution of importance of title and possession</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-302:2</td>
<td>Continued importance of concepts of title and possession</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-302:3</td>
<td>2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-303:1</td>
<td>General recognition of assignments and delegations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-303:2</td>
<td>Delegation of performance distinguished from assignment of rights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-303:3</td>
<td>Delegation of performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-303:4</td>
<td>Assignment of rights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-303:5</td>
<td>Construing transfer terms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-303:6</td>
<td>Text and comment amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-303:7</td>
<td>Summary of 2003 amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-304:1</td>
<td>Common-law background on the power to transfer a greater interest than a lessor has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-304:2</td>
<td>Voidable title by imposture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-304:3</td>
<td>—Worthless checks and cash sales</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-304:4</td>
<td>—Fraud punishable as larcenous under criminal law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-304:5</td>
<td>—Delivered under transaction of purchase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-304:6</td>
<td>Estoppel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2A-304:7</td>
<td>—Entrustment</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2A-304:8  Text and comment amendments
2A-304:9  Summary of 2003 amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-305 Sale or Sublease of Goods by Lessee
  2A-305:1  Power to transfer greater interest than lessee has
  2A-305:2  Entrustment
  2A-305:3  Text and comment amendments
  2A-305:4  Summary of 2003 amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-306 Priority of Certain Liens Arising by Operation of Law
  2A-306:1  Introduction; the artisan’s lien
  2A-306:2  Rule of priority
  2A-306:3  Text and comment amendments
  2A-306:4  Summary of 2003 amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-307 Priority of Liens Arising by Attachment or Levy on, Security Interests in, and Other Claims to Goods
  2A-307:1  General rule as to creditors of lessee and lessor
  2A-307:2  Protection for lessee in ordinary course of business
  2A-307:3  Requirements for a lessee in ordinary course of business
  2A-307:4  Priority between future advances and lessee
  2A-307:5  Text and comment amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-308 Special Rights of Creditors
  2A-308:1  Common-law background on fraudulent retention of possession
  2A-308:2  Fraudulent retention by a lessor
  2A-308:3  Retention measured from time of enforceability of lease contract; sale-lease-back protection
  2A-308:4  Creditor’s rights to fraudulently retained goods
  2A-308:5  Lessee’s rights to retained goods
  2A-308:6  Fraudulent retention of goods covered by documents
  2A-308:7  Text and comment amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-309 Lessor’s and Lessee’s Rights When Goods Become Fixtures
  2A-309:1  In general
  2A-309:2  Code rules and nonrules
  2A-309:3  Concepts related to the Code fixture rules
  2A-309:4  —Specialized priority rules under U.C.C. 2A-309(4)
2A-404:3 — Interpretation
2A-404:4 Without fault requirement
2A-404:5 Assumption of risk
2A-404:6 Text and comment amendments
2A-404:7 Summary of 2003 amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-405 Excused Performance
2A-405:1 English law background
2A-405:2 American law background
2A-405:3 Requirements for excuse and protection against default
2A-405:4 Assumption of greater obligation limitation
2A-405:5 Compliance with governmental regulations limitation
2A-405:6 Excusing performance of lessees
2A-405:7 Operative elements of commercial impracticability
2A-405:8 — Express agreement of basic assumption
2A-405:9 — Implied agreement of basic assumption
2A-405:10 — No agreement of basic assumption
2A-405:11 — Difficulty in determining assumptions
2A-405:12 Claims of excuse
2A-405:13 — Foreseeable contingencies
2A-405:14 — Price terms
2A-405:15 — Crop failure
2A-405:16 — Failure of source of supply
2A-405:17 — Other cases
2A-405:18 Conditions of relief other than finding of commercial impracticability
2A-405:19 Remedies
2A-405:20 Text and comment amendments
2A-405:21 Summary of 2003 amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-406 Procedure on Excused Performance
2A-406:1 Relationship to U.C.C. § 2A-405
2A-406:2 Lessee’s options where lessor or supplier is excused under U.C.C. § 2A-405
2A-406:3 Contrary agreement
2A-406:4 Text and comment amendments
2A-406:5 Summary of 2003 amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-407 Irrevocable Promises: Finance Leases
2A-407:1 Background of U.C.C. § 2A-407
2A-407:3 Consumer leases
2A-407:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2A
# Table of Contents

## PART 5 DEFAULT

### A In General

U.C.C. § 2A-501 Default: Procedure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-501:1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-501:2</td>
<td>Default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-501:3</td>
<td>Acceleration clauses and default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-501:4</td>
<td>Acceleration and insecurity clauses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-501:5</td>
<td>Rights and remedies, particularly of the lessor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-501:6</td>
<td>Duties of the lessor after default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-501:7</td>
<td>Election of remedies particularly by the lessor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-501:8</td>
<td>Lessee's rights, remedies, and duties after default</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-501:9</td>
<td>Postdefault waiver or variation of rights and duties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-501:10</td>
<td>Lessor's or lessee's rights as to both real and personal property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-501:11</td>
<td>Effect of use of judicial procedure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

U.C.C. § 2A-502 Notice After Default

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-502:1</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-502:2</td>
<td>2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

U.C.C. § 2A-503 Modification or Impairment of Rights and Remedies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-503:1</td>
<td>Competence to limit or modify remedies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-503:2</td>
<td>Limitations on competence to limit or modify remedies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-503:3</td>
<td>— Failure of essential purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-503:4</td>
<td>— Repair or replacement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-503:5</td>
<td>— Unwillingness or inability to repair or replace</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-503:6</td>
<td>— Independence of failed remedy and disclaimer or exclusion of damages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-503:7</td>
<td>— Unconscionability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-503:8</td>
<td>— Exclusion of consequential damages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-503:9</td>
<td>Collateral and ancillary obligations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-503:10</td>
<td>2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

U.C.C. § 2A-504 Liquidation of Damages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-504:1</td>
<td>Criterion for validity of liquidated damages; Test of reasonableness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-504:2</td>
<td>Factors to determine reasonableness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-504:3</td>
<td>— Damages, proof of loss and remedies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 2A-504:4</td>
<td>Consequence of invalidating unreasonable liquidated damage clause</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 2A-504:5 Restitution of payments
§ 2A-504:6 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-504:7 Summary of 2003 amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-505 Cancellation and Termination and Effect of Cancellation, Termination, Rescission, or Fraud on Rights and Remedies

§ 2A-505:1 Protecting remedies in communications with defaulting party
§ 2A-505:2 Fraud in general
§ 2A-505:3 Measure of damages for fraud
§ 2A-505:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2A

U.C.C. § 2A-506 Statute of Limitations

§ 2A-506:1 Statute of limitations
§ 2A-506:2 Accrual of cause of action
§ 2A-506:3 Characterizing the cause of action
§ 2A-506:4 Tolling the statute of limitations; No retroactive effect
§ 2A-506:5 Savings clause
§ 2A-506:6 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-506:7 Summary of 2003 amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-507 Proof of Market Rent: Time and Place

§ 2A-507:1 Time and place for measuring damages based on market rent
§ 2A-507:2 Constructing market rent where it does not exist
§ 2A-507:3 Admissibility of market quotations
§ 2A-507:4 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2A

U.C.C. § 2A-507A Right to Specific Performance or Replevin or the Like

§ 2A-507A:1 Reasons for and changes in former U.C.C.
§ 2A-521

B Default by Lessor

U.C.C. § 2A-508 Lessee's Remedies

§ 2A-508:1 Index of lessee's remedies
§ 2A-508:2 Comparison of lessor's and lessee's remedies
§ 2A-508:3 Lessee's security interest in rejected or revoked goods
§ 2A-508:4 Deduction of damages compared with recoupment, counterclaim, and accord and satisfaction
§ 2A-508:5 —Notice of deduction
§ 2A-508:6 —Availability of deduction for any default
§ 2A-508:7 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-508:8 Summary of 2003 amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-509 Lessee's Rights on Improper Delivery; Rightful Rejection
§ 2A-509:1 Qualifications on perfect tender rule; Conformity leeway
§ 2A-509:2 The perfect tender rule in context
§ 2A-509:3 Qualifications on perfect tender rule by de minimis doctrine
§ 2A-509:4 Qualifications on perfect tender rule by obligation of good faith
§ 2A-509:5 Qualifications on perfect tender rule by other Code provisions
§ 2A-509:6 Summary of perfect tender rule
§ 2A-509:7 Burden of proving conformity or nonconformity
§ 2A-509:8 Lessee's options respecting nonconforming goods
§ 2A-509:9 Reasonable time for rejection
§ 2A-509:10 Notice and manner of rejection
§ 2A-509:11 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-509:12 Summary of 2003 and 2005 amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-510 Installment Lease Contracts: Rejection and Default
§ 2A-510:1 General problems of installment lease contracts
§ 2A-510:2 Installment lease contract defined
§ 2A-510:3 Lessee's right to reject nonconforming installments
§ 2A-510:4 —Documents
§ 2A-510:5 Right to cancel entire lease contract
§ 2A-510:6 Seasonable notice of cancellation
§ 2A-510:7 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-510:8 Summary of 2003 amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-511 Merchant Lessee's Duties as to Rightfully Rejected Goods
§ 2A-511:1 Duties of merchant lessee in possession of rightfully rejected goods
§ 2A-511:2 —Good faith considerations
§ 2A-511:3 —Reimbursement
§ 2A-511:4 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-511:5 Summary of 2003 amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-512 Lessee's Duties as to Rightfully Rejected Goods
§ 2A-512:1 Lessee's duties as to rightfully rejected goods
§ 2A-512:2 Lessee's options as to rightfully rejected goods
§ 2A-512:3 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-512:4 Summary of 2003 amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-513 Cure by Lessor of Improper Tender or Delivery; Replacement
§ 2A-513:1 Cure as limitation on perfect tender rule where goods are rejected

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 2A-513:2 Cure offered within time specified for performance
§ 2A-513:3 Cure offered after time for performance has expired
§ 2A-513:4 —Reasonable grounds to believe
§ 2A-513:5 —With or without money allowance
§ 2A-513:6 —Further reasonable time
§ 2A-513:7 What constitutes cure
§ 2A-513:8 Shaken faith limitation on right to cure by repair
§ 2A-513:9 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-513:10 Summary of 2003 amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-514 Waiver of Lessee’s Objections
§ 2A-514:1 Particularizing defects
§ 2A-514:2 Requirements for unstated defects to result in waiver
§ 2A-514:3 Failure to state documentary defects upon payment against documents
§ 2A-514:4 Failure to state documentary defects where payment is not made against documents
§ 2A-514:5 Text and comment amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-515 Acceptance of Goods
§ 2A-515:1 Meaning of acceptance
§ 2A-515:2 Importance of acceptance
§ 2A-515:3 Activities constituting acceptance
§ 2A-515:4 —Failure to make effective rejection
§ 2A-515:5 —Action signifying acceptance
§ 2A-515:6 Acceptance of part of commercial unit
§ 2A-515:7 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-515:8 Summary of 2003 amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-516 Effect of Acceptance of Goods; Notice of Default; Burden of Establishing Default After Acceptance; Notice of Claim or Litigation to Person Answerable Over
§ 2A-516:1 Consequences of acceptance
§ 2A-516:2 —Liability of lessee for rent on contract terms
§ 2A-516:3 —Effect on rejection and other remedies
§ 2A-516:4 Notice of default
§ 2A-516:5 —Timeliness
§ 2A-516:6 —Policies as to timeliness
§ 2A-516:7 —Liberal interpretation of who must give notice
§ 2A-516:8 —Literal interpretation of who must give notice
§ 2A-516:9 Requirements of notice of default
§ 2A-519:5 Warranty and nonwarranty damages compared
§ 2A-519:6 Repair and replacement methods of determining damages in warranty cases
§ 2A-519:7 Incidental and consequential damages
§ 2A-519:8 Text and comment amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-520 Lessee's Incidental and Consequential Damages
§ 2A-520:1 In general
§ 2A-520:2 Lessee's incidental damages
§ 2A-520:3 Lessee's consequential damages
§ 2A-520:4 —Relationship to ordinary damages
§ 2A-520:5 Lessee's consequential damages for economic loss
§ 2A-520:6 —Proof of Loss
§ 2A-520:7 —Reason to know
§ 2A-520:8 —Rejection of tacit agreement test
§ 2A-520:9 —Mitigation
§ 2A-520:10 Consequential damages for lessee's personal injuries and injuries to property as result of breach of warranty
§ 2A-520:11 Other limitations on lessee's consequential damages
§ 2A-520:12 2003 and 2005 amendments to Article 2A
U.C.C. § 2A-521 Lessee's Right to Specific Performance or Replevin
§ 2A-521:1 Background
§ 2A-521:2 No requirement of specific or ascertained goods
§ 2A-521:3 Uniqueness or other proper circumstances as basis for specific performance
§ 2A-521:4 Replevin and Other Remedies
§ 2A-521:5 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-521:6 Summary of 2003 amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-522 Lessee's Right to Goods on Lessor's Insolvency
§ 2A-522:1 Placement and justification of specific performance right when insolvency occurs
§ 2A-522:2 Limitations on the right to reach goods by payment of part or all of rent or security
§ 2A-522:3 Limitations on the right to reach goods by identification of goods
§ 2A-522:4 Limitations on the right to reach goods by insolvency
§ 2A-522:5 Limitations on the right to reach goods by keeping tender good
§ 2A-522:6 Limitations on the right to reach goods by superior rights of third parties
Table of Contents

§ 2A-522:7 Reclamation as exclusive remedy
§ 2A-522:8 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-522:9 Summary of 2003 amendments

C Default by Lessee

U.C.C. § 2A-523 Lessor’s Remedies
§ 2A-523:1 Index of lessor’s remedies
§ 2A-523:2 Withholding
§ 2A-523:3 Cancellation
§ 2A-523:4 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-523:5 Summary of 2003 and 2005 amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-524 Lessor’s Right to Identify Goods to Lease
  Contract
§ 2A-524:1 Identification after default
§ 2A-524:2 Completion of manufacture or disposal of unfinished goods
§ 2A-524:3 Text and comment amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-525 Lessor’s Right to Possession of Goods
§ 2A-525:1 Refusal to deliver goods upon lessee’s insolvency
§ 2A-525:2 Lessor’s right to repossess
§ 2A-525:3 Notice before repossession
§ 2A-525:4 Self-help repossession
§ 2A-525:5 —Violence, threats, protests
§ 2A-525:6 —Other considerations
§ 2A-525:7 Alternatives to self-help repossession
§ 2A-525:8 Rights to require lessee to assemble leased goods
§ 2A-525:9 Right to dispose of leased goods without removal
§ 2A-525:10 Effect of law other than the Code; Bankruptcy and consumer protection statutes
§ 2A-525:11 Text and comment amendments

U.C.C. § 2A-526 Lessor’s Stoppage of Delivery in Transit or Otherwise
§ 2A-526:1 General considerations
§ 2A-526:2 When stoppage is permitted
§ 2A-526:3 —Goods in hands of carrier or other bailee
§ 2A-526:4 —Insolvency, breach, and repudiation
§ 2A-526:5 Termination of right to stop by Lessee’s receipt of goods
§ 2A-526:6 Termination of right to stop by attornment
§ 2A-526:7 Termination of right to stop by reshipment
§ 2A-526:8 Termination of right to stop by negotiation of document of title to lessee
§ 2A-526:9 Mechanics of stopping in transit
§ 2A-526:10 Text and comment amendments

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
xl ix
§ 2A-526:11 Summary of 2003 amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-527 Lessor’s Rights to Dispose of Goods
§ 2A-527:1 Lessor’s damages measured by release rent
§ 2A-527:2 Release requirement of good faith and commercial reasonableness
§ 2A-527:3 Release requirement of substantially similar lease
§ 2A-527:4 Consequences of noncompliance with release requirements
§ 2A-527:5 Computation of damages
§ 2A-527:6 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-527:7 Summary of 2003 amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-528 Lessor’s Damages for Non-Acceptance, Failure to Pay, Repudiation, or other Default
§ 2A-528:1 Lessor’s damages computed by market rent
§ 2A-528:2 Time and place for measuring market rent
§ 2A-528:3 Profit as the measure of damages
§ 2A-528:4 —Computation
§ 2A-528:5 — —Loss of volume
§ 2A-528:6 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-528:7 Summary of 2003 amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-529 Lessor’s Action for the Rent
§ 2A-529:1 Rent due under the lease contract
§ 2A-529:2 Specific performance
§ 2A-529:3 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-529:4 Summary of 2003 amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-530 Lessor’s Incidental Damages
§ 2A-530:1 Differences between incidental and consequential damages
§ 2A-530:2 Illustrations of incidental damages
§ 2A-530:3 2003 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-530:4 Summary of 2003 amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-531 Standing to Sue Third Parties for Injury to Goods
§ 2A-531:1 Actions against third parties
§ 2A-531:2 Suit by party not having risk of loss
§ 2A-531:3 Text and comment amendments
§ 2A-531:4 Summary of 2003 amendments
U.C.C. § 2A-532 Lessor’s Rights to Residual Interest
§ 2A-532:1 In general
§ 2A-532:2 Text and comment amendments
PART 6 TRANSITIONAL PROVISIONS APPLICABLE TO AMENDED ARTICLE 2A
U.C.C. § 2A-601 Effective Date
   § 2A-601:1 Author’s comment
U.C.C. § 2A-602 Amendment of Existing Article 2A
U.C.C. § 2A-603 Applicability
U.C.C. § 2A-604 Savings Clause
Appendix 2A. Leases

Volume 4

ARTICLE 3 COMMERCIAL PAPER

PART 1 SHORT TITLE, FORM AND INTERPRETATION
U.C.C. § 3-101 Short Title
   § 3-101:1 Short title and methodology
   U.C.C. § 3-102 Definitions and Index of Definitions
   § 3-102:1 Definitions and index of definitions
   § 3-102:2 Issue
   § 3-102:3 Delivery
   § 3-102:4 Lack of delivery as defense
   § 3-102:5 Delivery to remitter
   § 3-102:6 Time of issue
   § 3-102:7 Order
   § 3-102:8 Identification of drawee
   § 3-102:9 Order addressed to one or more persons
   § 3-102:10 Promise
   § 3-102:11 Secondary party
   § 3-102:12 Instrument
   U.C.C. § 3-103 Limitations on Scope of Article
   § 3-103:1 Scope of Article 3
   § 3-103:2 Exclusions—Investment securities
   § 3-103:3 Documents of title
   § 3-103:4 Money
   § 3-103:5 Obligations of federal government
   § 3-103:6 Conflicts between Article 3 and Article 4
   § 3-103:7 Conflicts between Article 3 and Article 9
U.C.C. § 3-104 Form of Negotiable Instruments; “Draft”; “Check”; “Certificate of Deposit”; “Note”
   § 3-104:1 Introduction to formal requisites of negotiability

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 3-104:2 Nonexclusivity of Article 3
§ 3-104:3 Exclusion of investment securities
§ 3-104:4 Negotiable instruments which do not comply with Article 3
§ 3-104:5 Negotiable instruments as “couriers without luggage”
§ 3-104:6 Conformity to subsection 3-104(1)
§ 3-104:7 Writing
§ 3-104:8 Signature by maker or drawer
§ 3-104:9 Unconditional promise or order
§ 3-104:10 Sum certain
§ 3-104:11 Money
§ 3-104:12 Definite time or on demand
§ 3-104:13 Order or bearer
§ 3-104:14 No other promise
§ 3-104:15 Classification of negotiable instruments
§ 3-104:16 Cashier’s checks
§ 3-104:17 Traveler’s checks
§ 3-104:18 Teller’s checks
§ 3-104:19 Certified checks
§ 3-104:20 Personal money orders
§ 3-104:21 Other special instruments

U.C.C. § 3-105 When Promise or Order Unconditional
§ 3-105:1 Unconditional promises generally
§ 3-105:2 Reference to other agreement
§ 3-105:3 Promise—Express condition
§ 3-105:4 —Implied or constructive condition
§ 3-105:5 Payment limited to particular fund

U.C.C. § 3-106 Sum Certain
§ 3-106:1 Sum certain generally
§ 3-106:2 Determination from instrument alone
§ 3-106:3 Interest
§ 3-106:4 Discounts
§ 3-106:5 Exchange
§ 3-106:6 Attorney’s fee or costs of collection
§ 3-106:7 Otherwise illegal terms

U.C.C. § 3-107 Money
§ 3-107:1 Payment in money
§ 3-107:2 Money defined
§ 3-107:3 Foreign currency

U.C.C. § 3-108 Payable on Demand
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-108:1</td>
<td>Demand instruments generally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-108:2</td>
<td>“Payable on demand” expressly stated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-108:3</td>
<td>No time for payment stated in instrument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 3-109</td>
<td>Definite Time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-109:1</td>
<td>Payment at definite time generally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-109:2</td>
<td>Instruments not payable at definite time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-109:3</td>
<td>Payment on or before stated date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-109:4</td>
<td>Time subject to acceleration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-109:5</td>
<td>Time subject to extension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 3-110</td>
<td>Payable to Order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-110:1</td>
<td>Instruments payable to order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-110:2</td>
<td>Requirements—In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-110:3</td>
<td>Payee described with reasonable certainty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-110:4</td>
<td>Permissible payees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-110:5</td>
<td>Bearer instruments distinguished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 3-111</td>
<td>Payable to Bearer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-111:1</td>
<td>Payment to bearer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-111:2</td>
<td>Order instruments distinguished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-111:3</td>
<td>Specific payee not designated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 3-112</td>
<td>Terms and Omissions Not Affecting Negotiability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-112:1</td>
<td>Terms not affecting negotiability in general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-112:2</td>
<td>Terms illegal under local law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-112:3</td>
<td>Unauthorized terms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-112:4</td>
<td>Omissions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-112:5</td>
<td>Terms relating to collateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-112:6</td>
<td>Confession of judgment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-112:7</td>
<td>Waiver of protective statutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-112:8</td>
<td>Full satisfaction of drawer’s obligation as result of indorsing or cashing instrument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-112:9</td>
<td>Draft drawn in set of parts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 3-113</td>
<td>Seal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-113:1</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 3-114</td>
<td>Date, Antedating, Postdating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-114:1</td>
<td>Dating of instrument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-114:2</td>
<td>Antedating and postdating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-114:3</td>
<td>Postdated instrument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-114:4</td>
<td>Antedated instrument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-114:5</td>
<td>Effect of knowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-114:6</td>
<td>Presumption of correct date</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 3-115</td>
<td>Incomplete Instruments</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 3-115:1 In general
§ 3-115:2 Incomplete instruments defined
§ 3-115:3 Necessity of intent
§ 3-115:4 Authorized completion
§ 3-115:5 Unauthorized completion
§ 3-115:6 Unfilled blanks—Nonessential terms

U.C.C. § 3-116 Instruments Payable to Two or More Persons
§ 3-116:1 Two or more payees
§ 3-116:2 Determining whether an instrument is payable
  jointly or in the alternative
§ 3-116:3 Rights of alternative payees
§ 3-116:4 Rights of joint payees—Negotiation
§ 3-116:5 —Enforcement
§ 3-116:6 —Discharge

U.C.C. § 3-117 Instruments Payable With Words of Description
§ 3-117:1 Words of description
§ 3-117:2 Instrument payable to agent or officer of specified
  person
§ 3-117:3 Instrument payable to any other fiduciary for
  specified person
§ 3-117:4 Instrument payable to named person
  unconditionally
§ 3-117:5 Instrument specifying particular account as payee

U.C.C. § 3-118 Ambiguous Terms and Rules of Construction
§ 3-118:1 Construing ambiguities in instruments
§ 3-118:2 Admissibility of parol evidence against results of
  Section 3-118
§ 3-118:3 Draft or note?
§ 3-118:4 Drafts drawn upon drawer
§ 3-118:5 Handwritten, typewritten and printed terms
§ 3-118:6 Words and figures
§ 3-118:7 Interest
§ 3-118:8 Liability of persons signing in same capacity in
  same transaction
§ 3-118:9 Extension of instrument

U.C.C. § 3-119 Other Writings Affecting Instrument
§ 3-119:1 Admission of extrinsic evidence of other writings
§ 3-119:2 Effect of other writings
§ 3-119:3 —Effect on holder in due course
§ 3-119:4 Admission of extrinsic evidence—Does not vary
  terms of instrument

liv
§ 3-119:5 —To explain ambiguities
§ 3-119:6 Parol evidence rule

U.C.C. § 3-120 Instruments “Payable Through” Bank
§ 3-120:1 Payable through bank
§ 3-120:2 When instrument is payable through bank
§ 3-120:3 Collecting bank

U.C.C. § 3-121 Instruments Payable at Bank
§ 3-121:1 In general
§ 3-121:2 Alternative A
§ 3-121:3 Alternative B

U.C.C. § 3-122 Accrual of Cause of Action
§ 3-122:1 In general
§ 3-122:2 Time instruments
§ 3-122:3 Demand instruments, cashier’s checks and certified checks
§ 3-122:4 Certificates of deposit
§ 3-122:5 Secondary parties
§ 3-122:6 Interest

PART 2 TRANSFER AND NEGOTIATION

U.C.C. § 3-201 Transfer: Right to Indorsement
§ 3-201:1 Rights of transferee generally
§ 3-201:2 Transferor’s rights transferred to transferee
§ 3-201:3 —Shelter provision—Transfers from holders in due course generally
§ 3-201:4 —Transfer to party to fraud or illegality affecting instrument
§ 3-201:5 —Transfer to prior holder with notice of defense or claim
§ 3-201:6 Other rights and limitations
§ 3-201:7 What constitutes transfer
§ 3-201:8 Who may be transferee
§ 3-201:9 Effect of failure to obtain necessary indorsement
§ 3-201:10 Right to indorsement

U.C.C. § 3-202 Negotiation
§ 3-202:1 In general
§ 3-202:2 Necessity of delivery
§ 3-202:3 Presentment for payment distinguished from negotiation
§ 3-202:4 Indorsement by or on behalf of holder
§ 3-202:5 Indorsement on instrument or use of allonge
§ 3-202:6  Indorsement operating as partial assignment
§ 3-202:7  Effect on indorsement of additional language

U.C.C. §  3-203 Wrong or Misspelled Name
§ 3-203:1  Improperly designated payees
§ 3-203:2  Rights of subsequent transferees
§ 3-203:3  Rights of payor

U.C.C. §  3-204 Special Indorsement; Blank Indorsement
§ 3-204:1  In general
§ 3-204:2  Special indorsements
§ 3-204:3  Blank indorsements
§ 3-204:4  Changing blank indorsement to special indorsement

U.C.C. §  3-205 Restrictive Indorsements
§ 3-205:1  In general
§ 3-205:2  Restrictive indorsement by or on behalf of holder
§ 3-205:3  Conditional indorsements
§ 3-205:4  Prohibition of further transfer or negotiation
§ 3-205:5  “For collection,” “for deposit,” “pay any bank” or the like
§ 3-205:6  For benefit or use of indorser or another person

U.C.C. §  3-206 Effect of Restrictive Indorsement
§ 3-206:1  In general
§ 3-206:2  Intermediary banks and nondepositary payor banks
§ 3-206:3  “For deposit,” “for collection,” “pay any bank,” and conditional indorsements
§ 3-206:4  Indorsement for benefit of indorser or third person
§ 3-206:5  Other consequences of making payment or giving value inconsistent with restrictive indorsement

U.C.C. §  3-207 Negotiation Effective Although It May Be Rescinded
§ 3-207:1  In general
§ 3-207:2  Grounds for rescission—Infancy
§ 3-207:3  —Lack of capacity
§ 3-207:4  —Corporation exceeding its powers
§ 3-207:5  —Duress and mistake
§ 3-207:6  —Fraud
§ 3-207:7  —Illegality
§ 3-207:8  —Breach of duty
§ 3-207:9  Right to rescind against holder in due course
§ 3-207:10 Rights of transferor against person not having rights of holder in due course
TABLE OF CONTENTS

U.C.C. § 3-208 Reacquisition
§ 3-208:1 In general
§ 3-208:2 Rights of reacquiring parties
§ 3-208:3 Discharge of intervening indorsers
§ 3-208:4 Rights of purchaser from reacquirer

PART 3 RIGHTS OF A HOLDER

U.C.C. § 3-301 Rights of a Holder
§ 3-301:1 In general
§ 3-301:2 Suing in holder's own name
§ 3-301:3 Transfer or negotiation of instrument
§ 3-301:4 Payment, satisfaction or discharge of instrument
§ 3-301:5 Definition of “holder”—Obligation must run to possessor
§ 3-301:6 —Person must be in possession of instrument

U.C.C. § 3-302 Holder in Due Course
§ 3-302:1 In general
§ 3-302:2 Good faith
§ 3-302:3 Close-connectedness
§ 3-302:4 Payee as holder in due course
§ 3-302:5 Denial of holder in due course status to certain categories of purchasers
§ 3-302:6 —Bulk transactions
§ 3-302:7 —Purchaser of limited interest
§ 3-302:8 Statutory exceptions for consumer transactions
§ 3-302:9 —FTC rule
§ 3-302:10 —State legislation

U.C.C. § 3-303 Taking for Value
§ 3-303:1 In general
§ 3-303:2 Holder’s performance of agreed consideration
§ 3-303:3 —Defective performance
§ 3-303:4 —Extent of enforcement following partial performance
§ 3-303:5 Security interest or lien on instrument
§ 3-303:6 Payment of or security for antecedent claim
§ 3-303:7 Negotiable instrument or irrevocable commitment to third person

U.C.C. § 3-304 Notice to Purchaser
§ 3-304:1 In general
§ 3-304:2 Notice of claim or defense—In general
§ 3-304:3 —Actual knowledge

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 lvii
§ 3-304:4 —Receipt of notification or notice
§ 3-304:5 —Reason to know
§ 3-304:6 Negotiation by fiduciary
§ 3-304:7 Executory promise or separate agreement
§ 3-304:8 Accommodation party
§ 3-304:9 —Notice of discharge
§ 3-304:10 Completion of incomplete instruments
§ 3-304:11 —Incomplete, irregular, visibly altered and forged instruments
§ 3-304:12 —Overdue or dishonored instruments
§ 3-304:13 When notice is effective—Notice to individual acting without agent
§ 3-304:14 —Notice to organization
§ 3-304:15 When notice ceases to be effective

U.C.C. § 3-305 Rights of a Holder in Due Course
§ 3-305:1 In general
§ 3-305:2 Freedom from claims and defenses
§ 3-305:3 Defenses of party who has dealt with holder
§ 3-305:4 Real defenses—Infancy
§ 3-305:5 —Other incapacity, duress or illegality
§ 3-305:6 —Fraud in factum
§ 3-305:7 Discharge

U.C.C. § 3-306 Rights of One Not Holder in Due Course
§ 3-306:1 In general
§ 3-306:2 Claims to instrument
§ 3-306:3 —Asserting defense to payment based on claim of ownership
§ 3-306:4 Available defenses—In general
§ 3-306:5 —Defenses to simple contract
§ 3-306:6 —Want or failure of consideration
§ 3-306:7 —Nonperformance of condition precedent to delivery, nondelivery or delivery for specific purpose
§ 3-306:8 —Defenses of third parties

U.C.C. § 3-307 Burden of Establishing Signatures, Defenses and Due Course
§ 3-307:1 In general
§ 3-307:2 Pleading requirements
§ 3-307:3 Burden of proof—Plaintiffs prima facie case
§ 3-307:4 —Effectiveness of signatures
§ 3-307:5 Defendant’s burden of establishing defenses
§ 3-307:6 Plaintiff’s burden after assertion of defense
# PART 4 LIABILITY OF PARTIES

U.C.C. § 3-401 Signature

- § 3-401:1 Signature
- § 3-401:2 Unauthorized signature
- § 3-401:3 Unnamed principal
- § 3-401:4 Guaranty and assumption agreements
- § 3-401:5 Indorsement on separate paper
- § 3-401:6 Acceptor’s liability
- § 3-401:7 Intervening holders of bearer instruments
- § 3-401:8 Personal money orders
- § 3-401:9 What constitutes signature

U.C.C. § 3-402 Signature in Ambiguous Capacity

- § 3-402:1 In general

U.C.C. § 3-403 Signature by Authorized Representative

- § 3-403:1 Principal’s liability
- § 3-403:2 Agent’s liability—In general
- § 3-403:3 —To immediate party to exculpatory agreement
- § 3-403:4 —To subsequent transferees
- § 3-403:5 —Representative capacity shown on instrument
- § 3-403:6 —Principal named on instrument
- § 3-403:7 —Signature in agent’s name only

U.C.C. § 3-404 Unauthorized Signatures

- § 3-404:1 In general
- § 3-404:2 Ratification
- § 3-404:3 Preclusion and estoppel
- § 3-404:4 Liability of unauthorized signer

U.C.C. § 3-405 Impostors; Signature in Name of Payee

- § 3-405:1 In general
- § 3-405:2 Need for indorsement in name of payee
- § 3-405:3 Persons in whose favor indorsement is effective
- § 3-405:4 Imposture by mail or otherwise
- § 3-405:5 Payee intended to have no interest in instrument—
  By person signing as or on behalf of maker or drawer
- § 3-405:6 —By agent or employee supplying payee’s name
- § 3-405:7 Instruments issued by federal government

U.C.C. § 3-406 Negligence Contributing to Alteration or Unauthorized Signature

- § 3-406:1 In general

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 3-406:2 Preclusion of negligent party
§ 3-406:3 —Against drawee or other payor
§ 3-406:4 —Against holders in due course
§ 3-406:5 —Against purchasers of instruments bearing forged indorsements
§ 3-406:6 Negligence
§ 3-406:7 Substantially contributes
§ 3-406:8 Use of reasonable care to prevent alteration
§ 3-406:9 Mailing check to wrong person
§ 3-406:10 Giving check to third person
§ 3-406:11 Sloppy business practices
§ 3-406:12 Hiring and supervision of employees
§ 3-406:13 Careless handling of blank checks
§ 3-406:14 Failure to report forgery or alteration
§ 3-406:15 Instruments issued by federal government

U.C.C. § 3-407 Alteration
§ 3-407:1 In general
§ 3-407:2 Effect of alteration on rights of holder
§ 3-407:3 Requirements for discharge
§ 3-407:4 —Alteration must be by holder or his agent
§ 3-407:5 —Alteration must change party’s contract
§ 3-407:6 —Alteration must be material
§ 3-407:7 —Alteration must be fraudulent
§ 3-407:8 Incomplete instruments

U.C.C. § 3-408 Consideration
§ 3-408:1 In general
§ 3-408:2 Failure of consideration as defense
§ 3-408:3 Want of consideration as defense
§ 3-408:4 Payment of or security for antecedent obligation as consideration

U.C.C. § 3-409 Draft Not an Assignment
§ 3-409:1 In general
§ 3-409:2 Consequences of regarding checks as revocable orders
§ 3-409:3 When check may operate as assignment
§ 3-409:4 Liability of drawee to holder in absence of assignment

U.C.C. § 3-410 Definition and Operation of Acceptance
§ 3-410:1 In general
§ 3-410:2 Requirements for effective acceptance
§ 3-410:3 Acceptance of incomplete instruments
## Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-410:4</td>
<td>Acceptance for honor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 3-411</td>
<td>Certification of a Check</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-411:1</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-411:2</td>
<td>Certification procured by holder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-411:3</td>
<td>Certification procured by a drawer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-411:4</td>
<td>Bank not obligated to certify</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 3-412</td>
<td>Acceptance Varying Draft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-412:1</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-412:2</td>
<td>Holder’s decision to refuse acceptance varying draft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-412:3</td>
<td>Holder’s decision to accept acceptance varying draft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-412:4</td>
<td>When does acceptance vary draft</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-412:5</td>
<td>—Acceptance varying place of payment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-412:6</td>
<td>—Acceptance payable as originally drawn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 3-413</td>
<td>Contract of Maker, Drawer and Acceptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-413:1</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-413:2</td>
<td>Contract of maker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-413:3</td>
<td>Contract of acceptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-413:4</td>
<td>Contract of drawer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-413:5</td>
<td>Admission of payee’s existence and capacity to indorse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 3-414</td>
<td>Contract of Indorser; Order of Liability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-414:1</td>
<td>Indorser’s contract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-414:2</td>
<td>Parties to whom indorser is liable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 3-415</td>
<td>Contract of Accommodation Party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-415:1</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-415:2</td>
<td>What is accommodation party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-415:3</td>
<td>Proof of accommodation status—What must be proved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-415:4</td>
<td>—Use of parol evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-415:5</td>
<td>Liability of accommodation party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-415:6</td>
<td>Types of defenses available to accommodation party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-415:7</td>
<td>Accommodation party’s defenses on underlying transactions—Lack of consideration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-415:8</td>
<td>—Failure of condition precedent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-415:9</td>
<td>—Special understanding with creditor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-415:10</td>
<td>—Real defenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-415:11</td>
<td>—Accommodated party’s defenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-415:12</td>
<td>Accommodated party’s rights against accommodation party</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 lxi
§ 3-415:13 Accommodation party's rights against party accommodated

U.C.C. § 3-416 Contract of Guarantor

§ 3-416:1 In general
§ 3-416:2 Guaranties of payment and of collection
§ 3-416:3 Effect of words of guaranty

U.C.C. § 3-417 Warranties on Presentment and Transfer

§ 3-417:1 In general
§ 3-417:2 Warranties on presentment
§ 3-417:3 Who makes presenter's warranties?
§ 3-417:4 To whom are presenter's warranties made?
§ 3-417:5 No presenter's warranties as to adequacy of drawer's account or stop payment orders
§ 3-417:6 Presenter's warranties—Good title
§ 3-417:7 —No knowledge that maker's or drawer's signature is unauthorized
§ 3-417:8 —No material alteration
§ 3-417:9 Breach of presenter's warranties—Accrual of cause of action and statute of limitations
§ 3-417:10 —Damages
§ 3-417:11 Warranties on transfer—By whom given?
§ 3-417:12 —To whom given?
§ 3-417:13 Transferor's warranties—Good title and rightful transfer
§ 3-417:14 —All signatures are genuine or authorized
§ 3-417:15 —No material alteration
§ 3-417:16 —No defense of any party is good against him
§ 3-417:17 —No knowledge of any insolvency proceeding
§ 3-417:18 Breach of transferor's warranties—Accrual of cause of action
§ 3-417:19 —Damages

U.C.C. § 3-418 Finality of Payment or Acceptance

§ 3-418:1 In general
§ 3-418:2 Effect of finality of payment
§ 3-418:3 As to whom payment is final
§ 3-418:4 Effect of nonfinality of payment
§ 3-418:5 Finality of acceptance

U.C.C. § 3-419 Conversion of Instrument; Innocent Representative

§ 3-419:1 Conversion of instrument in general
§ 3-419:2 Lost or stolen instruments

lxii
### Table of Contents

| § 3-419:3 | —Who may be liable for conversion |
| § 3-419:4 | —Who may bring action for conversion |
| § 3-419:5 | —Conversion by representatives including depository and collecting banks |
| § 3-419:6 | —Negligence of indorssee as defense to conversion |
| § 3-419:7 | —Other defenses to conversion |
| § 3-419:8 | Payment inconsistent with restrictive indorsement |
| § 3-419:9 | Refusal to return instrument as conversion |
| § 3-419:10 | Damages for conversion; Statute of limitations |

### PART 5 PRESENTMENT, NOTICE OF DISHONOR AND PROTEST

**U.C.C. § 3-501** When Presentment, Notice of Dishonor, and Protest Necessary or Permissible

| § 3-501:1 | In general |
| § 3-501:2 | Conditions precedent to liability—Secondary parties |
| § 3-501:3 | —Makers and acceptors |
| § 3-501:4 | Presentment for payment and notice of dishonor |
| § 3-501:5 | Presentment for acceptance—Required |
| § 3-501:6 | —Optional |
| § 3-501:7 | Indorsement after maturity |
| § 3-501:8 | Protest |

**U.C.C. § 3-502** Unexcused Delay; Discharge

| § 3-502:1 | Effect of delay |
| § 3-502:2 | Delay in presentment or notice of dishonor |
| § 3-502:3 | Discharge—Indorsers |
| § 3-502:4 | —Drawers |
| § 3-502:5 | —Makers and acceptors of domiciled instruments |
| § 3-502:6 | —Where necessary protest delayed |

**U.C.C. § 3-503** Time of Presentment

| § 3-503:1 | In general |
| § 3-503:2 | Presentment of instrument—On business day, at reasonable hour |
| § 3-503:3 | —Payable at definite time |
| § 3-503:4 | —Payable fixed period after sight |
| § 3-503:5 | —Due date shown |
| § 3-503:6 | —Date of payment accelerated |
| § 3-503:7 | —Payable on demand |
| § 3-503:8 | Time presentment—Ordinary checks |
| § 3-503:9 | —Bank checks |
| § 3-503:10 | —Other demand instruments |

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
### Table of Contents

**U.C.C. § 3-509 Protest; Noting for Protest**

- § 3-509:1 Protest
- § 3-509:2 — Formal requirements
- § 3-509:3 — Contents
- § 3-509:4 Officials authorized to make protest
- § 3-509:5 Timeliness of protest

**U.C.C. § 3-510 Evidence of Dishonor and Notice of Dishonor**

- § 3-510:1 In general
- § 3-510:2 Presumption and burden of proof
- § 3-510:3 Protest
- § 3-510:4 Purported stamp or writing of drawee, payor bank or presenting bank
- § 3-510:5 Books or records of drawee, payor bank or collecting bank

**U.C.C. § 3-511 Waived or Excused Presentment, Protest or Notice of Dishonor or Delay Therein**

- § 3-511:1 In general
- § 3-511:2 Effect of excuse
- § 3-511:3 Basis of excuse—Lack of notice
- § 3-511:4 — Circumstances beyond party’s control
- § 3-511:5 — Reasonable diligence not enough for performance
- § 3-511:6 — Party sought to be charged has countermanded payment on instrument
- § 3-511:7 — Party sought to be charged has dishonored instrument
- § 3-511:8 — Party sought to be charged has no reason to expect or right to require payment or acceptance
- § 3-511:9 — Express waiver
- § 3-511:10 — Implied waiver
- § 3-511:11 — Party to pay or accept is dead or insolvent
- § 3-511:12 — Acceptance or payment refused for reasons other than proper presentment
- § 3-511:13 — Draft is dishonored by nonacceptance

**PART 6 DISCHARGE**

**U.C.C. § 3-601 Discharge of Parties**

- § 3-601:1 In general
- § 3-601:2 Effect of discharge
- § 3-601:3 Discharge available on simple contract for payment of money
- § 3-601:4 Discharge of all parties
- § 3-601:5 — Upon reacquisition by prior party

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 3-601:6 — Discharges under other provisions of Article 3

U.C.C. § 3-602 Effect of Discharge Against Holder in Due Course
§ 3-602:1 In general

U.C.C. § 3-603 Payment or Satisfaction
§ 3-603:1 In general
§ 3-603:2 Effect of payment or satisfaction—Operation as discharge
§ 3-603:3 — Operation as purchase
§ 3-603:4 Payment or satisfaction—Without notice of adverse claim
§ 3-603:5 — With notice of adverse claim
§ 3-603:6 — — Assertion of adverse claim
§ 3-603:7 — — Exceptions to requirement of supplying indemnity or obtaining injunction

U.C.C. § 3-604 Tender of Payment
§ 3-604:1 In general
§ 3-604:2 Effect and extent of discharge
§ 3-604:3 What constitutes tender of payment
§ 3-604:4 Constructive tender

U.C.C. § 3-605 Cancellation and Renunciation
§ 3-605:1 In general
§ 3-605:2 Operation of cancellation, renunciation or surrender as discharge
§ 3-605:3 Who may discharge party by cancellation or renunciation
§ 3-605:4 Manner of cancellation
§ 3-605:5 Manner of renunciation and surrender
§ 3-605:6 Intent to discharge

U.C.C. § 3-606 Impairment of Recourse or of Collateral
§ 3-606:1 In general
§ 3-606:2 Releases, extensions, agreements not to sue and discharges
§ 3-606:3 — Existence and holder’s knowledge of party’s right of recourse
§ 3-606:4 — Binding agreement
§ 3-606:5 — Extent of discharge
§ 3-606:6 — Consent to discharge
§ 3-606:7 — Express reservation of rights
§ 3-606:8 — Exceptions as to discharge of persons against whom right of recourse exists
§ 3-606:9 Impairment of collateral—In general
Table of Contents

§ 3-606:10 —What constitutes unjustified impairment
§ 3-606:11 —Extent of discharge
§ 3-606:12 —Consent to impairment

PART 7 ADVICE OF INTERNATIONAL SIGHT DRAFT

U.C.C. § 3-701 Letter of Advice of International Sight Draft
§ 3-701:1 In general
§ 3-701:2 Consequences of international sight draft

PART 8 MISCELLANEOUS

U.C.C. § 3-801 Drafts in a Set
§ 3-801:1 In general
§ 3-801:2 Formal requirements
§ 3-801:3 Liability and priority disputes
U.C.C. § 3-802 Effect of Instrument on Obligation for Which It Is Given
§ 3-802:1 In general
§ 3-802:2 Effect of taking bank instrument on underlying obligation
§ 3-802:3 Effect of taking any other instrument for obligation—In general
§ 3-802:4 —Suspension of obligation
§ 3-802:5 —When instrument is dishonored
§ 3-802:6 —When instrument is discharged
U.C.C. § 3-803 Notice to Third Party
§ 3-803:1 Notice to third party to defend action
§ 3-803:2 Typical situations
U.C.C. § 3-804 Lost, Destroyed or Stolen Instruments
§ 3-804:1 In general
§ 3-804:2 What owner must prove
§ 3-804:3 —Ownership
§ 3-804:4 —Facts preventing production of instrument
§ 3-804:5 —Terms
§ 3-804:6 Posting of security
§ 3-804:7 Consequences of action under Section 3-804
U.C.C. § 3-805 Instruments Not Payable to Order or to Bearer
§ 3-805:1 In general
§ 3-805:2 Treatment of nonnegotiable instruments

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
ARTICLE 3 [REV] NEGOTIABLE INSTRUMENTS

PART 1 [REV] GENERAL PROVISIONS AND DEFINITIONS

U.C.C. § 3-101 [Rev] Short Title
§ 3-101:1 [Rev] Short title and history
§ 3-101:2 [Rev] Organization of Article 3
U.C.C. § 3-102 [Rev] Subject Matter
§ 3-102:1 [Rev] Scope of Article 3
§ 3-102:2 [Rev] Exclusions—Investment securities
§ 3-102:3 [Rev] Obligations of federal government
§ 3-102:4 [Rev] Money
§ 3-102:5 [Rev] Conflicts between Article 3 and Article 4
§ 3-102:6 [Rev] Conflicts between Article 3 and Article 9
§ 3-102:7 [Rev] Federal Reserve regulations and operating circulars

U.C.C. § 3-103 [Rev] Definitions
§ 3-103:1 [Rev] Definitions and index of definitions
§ 3-103:2 [Rev] Delivery to remitter
§ 3-103:3 [Rev] Order, drawer, drawee, and acceptor
§ 3-103:4 [Rev] Promise
§ 3-103:5 [Rev] Good faith
§ 3-103:6 [Rev] Ordinary care
§ 3-103:7 [Rev] Consumer account
§ 3-103:8 [Rev] Consumer transaction
§ 3-103:9 [Rev] Principal obligor
§ 3-103:10 [Rev] Record
§ 3-103:11 [Rev] Remotely-created consumer item
§ 3-103:12 [Rev] Consumer account

U.C.C. § 3-104 [Rev] Negotiable Instrument
§ 3-104:1 [Rev] Introduction to formal requisites of negotiability
§ 3-104:2 [Rev] Nonexclusivity of Article 3
§ 3-104:3 [Rev] Conformity to Section 3-104(a)
§ 3-104:4 [Rev] Writing
§ 3-104:5 [Rev] Signature by maker or drawer
§ 3-104:6 [Rev] Unconditional promise or order
§ 3-104:7 [Rev] Fixed amount
§ 3-104:8 [Rev] Payment in money
§ 3-104:9 [Rev] Definite time or on demand
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 3-104:10 [Rev]  Order or bearer
§ 3-104:11 [Rev]  No other promise
§ 3-104:12 [Rev]  Terms relating to collateral
§ 3-104:13 [Rev]  Classification of negotiable instruments
§ 3-104:14 [Rev]  Cashier’s checks
§ 3-104:15 [Rev]  Traveler’s checks
§ 3-104:16 [Rev]  Teller’s checks
§ 3-104:17 [Rev]  Personal money orders
§ 3-104:18 [Rev]  NOWs and trade acceptance

U.C.C. § 3-105 [Rev]  Issue of Instrument
§ 3-105:1 [Rev]  Issue
§ 3-105:2 [Rev]  Delivery
§ 3-105:3 [Rev]  Lack of delivery, conditional delivery and delivery for special purpose as defenses
§ 3-105:4 [Rev]  Time of issue

U.C.C. § 3-106 [Rev]  Unconditional Promise or Order
§ 3-106:1 [Rev]  Unconditional promises generally
§ 3-106:2 [Rev]  Reference to other agreement
§ 3-106:3 [Rev]  Promise—Express condition
§ 3-106:4 [Rev]  Implied or constructive condition
§ 3-106:5 [Rev]  Traveler’s checks

U.C.C. § 3-107 [Rev]  Instrument Payable in Foreign Money
§ 3-107:1 [Rev]  Foreign currency

U.C.C. § 3-108 [Rev]  Payable on Demand or at Definite Time
§ 3-108:1 [Rev]  Payable on demand or at definite time—Demand instruments generally
§ 3-108:2 [Rev]  “Payable on demand” expressly stated
§ 3-108:3 [Rev]  Demand instruments—No time for payment stated in instrument
§ 3-108:4 [Rev]  Instruments whose time of payment is readily ascertainable at time of issuance
§ 3-108:5 [Rev]  Payment on or before stated date
§ 3-108:6 [Rev]  Time subject to acceleration or prepayment
§ 3-108:7 [Rev]  Time subject to extension

U.C.C. § 3-109 [Rev]  Payable to Bearer or to Order
§ 3-109:1 [Rev]  Instruments payable to order or bearer
§ 3-109:2 [Rev]  Payable to bearer
§ 3-109:3 [Rev]  Requirements for instruments payable to order

U.C.C. § 3-110 [Rev]  Identification of Person to Whom Instrument is Payable
§ 3-110:1 [Rev]  Identification of person to whom instrument is payable

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018  lxix
§ 3-110:2 [Rev] Two or more payees
§ 3-110:3 [Rev] Determining whether instrument is payable jointly or in the alternative
§ 3-110:4 [Rev] Rights of joint payees
§ 3-110:5 [Rev] Words of description
§ 3-110:6 [Rev] Instrument specifying particular account as payee
§ 3-110:7 [Rev] Instrument payable to agent or similar representative of named or identified person
§ 3-110:8 [Rev] Instrument to trust or estate or person described as trustee or representative of trust or estate or fund or organization which is not legal entity

U.C.C. § 3-111 [Rev] Place of Payment
§ 3-111:1 [Rev] Place of payment

U.C.C. § 3-112 [Rev] Interest
§ 3-112:1 [Rev] Interest

U.C.C. § 3-113 [Rev] Date of Instrument
§ 3-113:1 [Rev] Dating of instrument—Undated instruments
§ 3-113:2 [Rev] Antedating and postdating

U.C.C. § 3-114 [Rev] Contradictory Terms of Instrument
§ 3-114:1 [Rev] Handwritten, typewritten and printed terms
§ 3-114:2 [Rev] Words and numbers

U.C.C. § 3-115 [Rev] Incomplete Instrument
§ 3-115:1 [Rev] Incomplete instruments—In general
§ 3-115:2 [Rev] Authorized completion
§ 3-115:3 [Rev] Unauthorized completion

U.C.C. § 3-116 [Rev] Joint and Several Liability; Contribution
§ 3-116:1 [Rev] Liability of persons signing in same capacity in same transaction
§ 3-116:2 [Rev] Effect of joint and several liability

U.C.C. § 3-117 [Rev] Other Agreements Affecting Instrument
§ 3-117:1 [Rev] Admission of extrinsic evidence of other writings
§ 3-117:2 [Rev] Effect on holder in due course
§ 3-117:3 [Rev] Admission of extrinsic evidence—To vary the terms of instrument
§ 3-117:4 [Rev] To explain ambiguities
§ 3-117:5 [Rev] Parol evidence rule

U.C.C. § 3-118 [Rev] Statute of Limitations
§ 3-118:1 [Rev] Statute of limitations
§ 3-118:2 [Rev] Notes

lxx
U.C.C. § 3-204 [Rev] Indorsement
§ 3-204:1 [Rev] Indorsement—In general
§ 3-204:2 [Rev] Signature presumed to be indorsement
§ 3-204:3 [Rev] Indorsement on instrument or use of allonge
§ 3-204:4 [Rev] Improperly designated payees
U.C.C. § 3-205 [Rev] Special Indorsement; Blank Indorsement; Anomalous Indorsement
§ 3-205:1 [Rev] Special indorsement; Blank indorsement; Anomalous indorsement
§ 3-205:2 [Rev] Special indorsements
§ 3-205:3 [Rev] Blank indorsements
§ 3-205:4 [Rev] Changing blank indorsement to special indorsement
U.C.C. § 3-206 [Rev] Restrictive Indorsement
§ 3-206:1 [Rev] Restrictive indorsement
§ 3-206:2 [Rev] Restrictive indorsement by or on behalf of holder
§ 3-206:3 [Rev] Conditional indorsements
§ 3-206:4 [Rev] Prohibition of further transfer or negotiation
§ 3-206:5 [Rev] “For collection,” “for deposit,” “pay any bank” or like—Introduction
§ 3-206:6 [Rev] Effect of “for deposit” and “for collection” indorsements on intermediary and payor banks
§ 3-206:7 [Rev] Effect of “for deposit” and “for collection” indorsements on depositary banks and other purchasers
§ 3-206:8 [Rev] For benefit or use of indorser or another person
U.C.C. § 3-207 [Rev] Reacquisition
§ 3-207:1 [Rev] Reacquisition—Rights of reacquiring party
§ 3-207:2 [Rev] What is reacquisition
§ 3-207:3 [Rev] Rights of purchaser from reacquirer

PART 3 [REV] ENFORCEMENT OF INSTRUMENTS
U.C.C. § 3-301 [Rev] Person Entitled to Enforce Instrument
§ 3-301:1 [Rev] Person entitled to enforce instrument
§ 3-301:2 [Rev] Definition of “holder”—Obligation must run to possessor
§ 3-301:3 [Rev] Person must be in possession of instrument
U.C.C. § 3-302 [Rev] Holder in Due Course
§ 3-302:1 [Rev] Holder in due course status—In general
§ 3-302:2 [Rev] Payee as holder in due course
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 3-302:3 [Rev]  Denial of holder in due course status to
certain categories of purchasers
§ 3-302:4 [Rev]  Bulk transactions
§ 3-302:5 [Rev]  Secured party's rights as holder in due
course
§ 3-302:6 [Rev]  Consumer transactions
§ 3-302:7 [Rev]  Case law close-connectedness
§ 3-302:8 [Rev]  FTC rule
§ 3-302:9 [Rev]  State legislation
§ 3-302:10 [Rev]  Good faith
§ 3-302:11 [Rev]  Notice—In general
§ 3-302:12 [Rev]  Actual knowledge
§ 3-302:13 [Rev]  Receipt of notification or notice
§ 3-302:14 [Rev]  Reason to know
§ 3-302:15 [Rev]  When notice effective—Notice to individual
acting without agent
§ 3-302:16 [Rev]  Notice to organization
§ 3-302:17 [Rev]  When notice ceases to be effective
§ 3-302:18 [Rev]  Notice of claim or defense—In general
§ 3-302:19 [Rev]  Notice of discharge
§ 3-302:20 [Rev]  Incomplete, irregular, visibly altered and
forged instruments

U.C.C. § 3-303 [Rev]  Value and Consideration
§ 3-303:1 [Rev]  Value and consideration—In general
§ 3-303:2 [Rev]  Holder’s performance of agreed consideration
§ 3-303:3 [Rev]  Security interest in or lien on instrument
§ 3-303:4 [Rev]  Payment of or security for antecedent claim
§ 3-303:5 [Rev]  Negotiable instrument or irrevocable
commitment to third person
§ 3-303:6 [Rev]  Consideration—In general
§ 3-303:7 [Rev]  Payment of or security for antecedent
obligation as consideration

U.C.C. § 3-304 [Rev]  Overdue Instrument
§ 3-304:1 [Rev]  Overdue or dishonored instruments—In
general
§ 3-304:2 [Rev]  When instrument is overdue

U.C.C. § 3-305 [Rev]  Defenses and Claims in Recoupment;
Claims in Consumer Transactions
§ 3-305:1 [Rev]  Defenses and claims in recoupment
§ 3-305:2 [Rev]  Real defenses—Infancy
§ 3-305:3 [Rev]  Other incapacity, duress or illegality
§ 3-305:4 [Rev]  Fraud in the factum
§ 3-305:5 [Rev]  Discharge in bankruptcy
§ 3-305:6 [Rev] Available defenses
§ 3-305:7 [Rev] Claims in recoupment
§ 3-305:8 [Rev] Defenses or claims in recoupment of party who has dealt with holder
§ 3-305:9 [Rev] Asserting defense to payment based on claim of ownership
§ 3-305:10 [Rev] Defenses or claims in recoupment of third parties
§ 3-305:11 [Rev] Accommodation party defenses
U.C.C. § 3-306 [Rev] Claims to an Instrument
§ 3-306:1 [Rev] Claims to instrument
U.C.C. § 3-307 [Rev] Notice of Breach of Fiduciary Duty
§ 3-307:1 [Rev] Notice of breach of fiduciary duty
§ 3-307:2 [Rev] Definitions: Fiduciary and represented person
§ 3-307:3 [Rev] Equitable claim of represented person
§ 3-307:4 [Rev] Right of fiduciary to negotiate instrument on behalf of represented person
§ 3-307:5 [Rev] Notice of breach of fiduciary duty
U.C.C. § 3-308 [Rev] Proof of Signatures and Status as Holder in Due Course
§ 3-308:1 [Rev] Proof of signatures and status as holder in due course
§ 3-308:2 [Rev] Pleading requirements
§ 3-308:3 [Rev] Burden of proof—Plaintiff’s prima facie case
§ 3-308:4 [Rev] Effectiveness of signatures
§ 3-308:5 [Rev] Defendant’s burden of establishing defenses
§ 3-308:6 [Rev] Plaintiff’s burden after assertion of defense
U.C.C. § 3-309 [Rev] Enforcement of Lost, Destroyed, or Stolen Instrument
§ 3-309:1 [Rev] Enforcement of lost, destroyed or stolen instruments—In general
§ 3-309:2 [Rev] What person seeking enforcement must prove
§ 3-309:3 [Rev] Right to enforce instrument
§ 3-309:4 [Rev] Facts preventing production of instrument
§ 3-309:5 [Rev] Terms
§ 3-309:6 [Rev] Adequate protection
U.C.C. § 3-310 [Rev] Effect of Instrument on Obligation for Which Taken
§ 3-310:1 [Rev] Effect of instrument on obligation for which taken
§ 3-310:2 [Rev] Effect of taking bank instrument on underlying obligation
§ 3-310:3 [Rev] Effect of taking any other instrument for obligation—In general
Table of Contents

§ 3-310:4 [Rev] Suspension of obligation
§ 3-310:5 [Rev] When instrument is dishonored
§ 3-310:6 [Rev] When instrument is discharged
U.C.C. § 3-311 [Rev] Accord and Satisfaction by Use of Instrument
§ 3-311:1 [Rev] Accord and satisfaction by use of instrument—Introduction
§ 3-311:2 [Rev] Requirements for effective accord and satisfaction
§ 3-311:3 [Rev] Exception for organizational creditors
§ 3-311:4 [Rev] Other exceptions
§ 3-311:5 [Rev] Limitations on exceptions
U.C.C. § 3-312 [Rev] Lost, Destroyed, or Stolen Cashier’s Check, Teller’s Check, or Certified Check
§ 3-312:1 [Rev] Lost, destroyed or stolen cashier’s checks, teller’s checks or certified checks
§ 3-312:2 [Rev] Who may assert claim
§ 3-312:3 [Rev] Requirements for asserting claim
§ 3-312:4 [Rev] Effectiveness of claim
§ 3-312:5 [Rev] Priority problems—Holders in due course and multiple claimants

Part 4 [Rev] Liability of Parties
U.C.C. § 3-401 [Rev] Signature
§ 3-401:1 [Rev] Signature
§ 3-401:2 [Rev] Guaranty and assumption agreements
§ 3-401:3 [Rev] Personal money orders
§ 3-401:4 [Rev] What constitutes signature
U.C.C. § 3-402 [Rev] Signature by Representative
§ 3-402:1 [Rev] Signature by representative—Liability of represented party
§ 3-402:2 [Rev] Representative’s liability
U.C.C. § 3-403 [Rev] Unauthorized Signature
§ 3-403:1 [Rev] Unauthorized signature—In general
§ 3-403:2 [Rev] Ratification
§ 3-403:3 [Rev] Estoppel
§ 3-403:4 [Rev] Liability of unauthorized signer
U.C.C. § 3-404 [Rev] Impostors; Fictitious Payees
§ 3-404:1 [Rev] Impostors and fictitious payees—In general
§ 3-404:2 [Rev] Need for indorsement in name of payee
§ 3-404:3 [Rev] Persons in whose favor indorsement is effective
§ 3-404:4 [Rev] Imposture by mail or otherwise

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 lxxv
§ 3-404:5 [Rev] Payee intended to have no interest in instrument—By person signing as or on behalf of maker or drawer

§ 3-404:6 [Rev] Instruments issued by federal government

U.C.C. § 3-405 [Rev] Employer’s Responsibility for Fraudulent Indorsement by Employee

§ 3-405:1 [Rev] Employers responsibility for fraudulent indorsement by employee

§ 3-405:2 [Rev] Persons in whose favor indorsement is effective

§ 3-405:3 [Rev] Need for indorsement in name of payee

§ 3-405:4 [Rev] Fraudulent indorsements by employees

U.C.C. § 3-406 [Rev] Negligence Contributing to Forged Signature or Alteration of Instrument

§ 3-406:1 [Rev] Negligence—In general

§ 3-406:2 [Rev] Comparative negligence

§ 3-406:3 [Rev] Preclusion of negligent party

§ 3-406:4 [Rev] Against person who in good faith pays instrument

§ 3-406:5 [Rev] Against person who takes instrument for value or for collection

§ 3-406:6 [Rev] Failure to exercise ordinary care

§ 3-406:7 [Rev] Substantially contributes

§ 3-406:8 [Rev] Use of reasonable care to prevent alteration

§ 3-406:9 [Rev] Mailing check to wrong person

§ 3-406:10 [Rev] Giving check to third person

§ 3-406:11 [Rev] Sloppy business practices

§ 3-406:12 [Rev] Hiring and supervision of employees

§ 3-406:13 [Rev] Careless handling of blank checks

§ 3-406:14 [Rev] Failure to report forgery or alteration

§ 3-406:15 [Rev] Instruments issued by federal government

U.C.C. § 3-407 [Rev] Alteration

§ 3-407:1 [Rev] Alteration—In general

§ 3-407:2 [Rev] Effect of alteration

§ 3-407:3 [Rev] Requirements for discharge

§ 3-407:4 [Rev] Incomplete instruments

U.C.C. § 3-408 [Rev] Drawee not Liable on Unaccepted Draft

§ 3-408:1 [Rev] Drawee not liable on unaccepted draft

§ 3-408:2 [Rev] When check may operate as assignment

§ 3-408:3 [Rev] Liability of drawee to holder in absence of assignment

U.C.C. § 3-409 [Rev] Acceptance of Draft; Certified Check

§ 3-409:1 [Rev] Acceptance of draft; Certified check—In general

lxxvi
| § | 3-409:2 [Rev] | Requirements for effective acceptance |
| § | 3-409:3 [Rev] | Acceptance of incomplete instruments |
| § | 3-409:4 [Rev] | Certified checks |
| § | 3-409:5 [Rev] | Bank not obligated to certify |
| U.C.C. § 3-410 [Rev] | Acceptance Varying Draft |
| § | 3-410:1 [Rev] | Acceptance varying draft—In general |
| § | 3-410:2 [Rev] | Holder’s decision to refuse acceptance varying draft |
| § | 3-410:3 [Rev] | Holder’s decision to accept acceptance varying draft |
| § | 3-410:4 [Rev] | When acceptance varies draft |
| § | 3-410:5 [Rev] | Acceptance varying place of payment |
| § | 3-410:6 [Rev] | Acceptance payable as originally drawn |
| U.C.C. § 3-411 [Rev] | Refusal to Pay Cashier’s Checks, Teller’s Checks, and Certified Checks |
| § | 3-411:1 [Rev] | Refusal to pay cashier’s checks, teller’s checks and certified checks—Treatment of bank checks under old Article 3 |
| § | 3-411:2 [Rev] | Treatment under Revised Article 3 of cashier’s checks, teller’s checks, and certified checks |
| U.C.C. § 3-412 [Rev] | Obligation of Issuer of Note or Cashier’s Check |
| § | 3-412:1 [Rev] | Obligation of issuer of note |
| § | 3-412:2 [Rev] | Issuer of cashier’s check |
| U.C.C. § 3-413 [Rev] | Obligation of Acceptor |
| § | 3-413:1 [Rev] | Contract of acceptor |
| U.C.C. § 3-414 [Rev] | Obligation of Drawer |
| § | 3-414:1 [Rev] | Contract of drawer |
| § | 3-414:2 [Rev] | Discharge for delay in making presentment |
| § | 3-414:3 [Rev] | Certification or acceptance |
| U.C.C. § 3-415 [Rev] | Obligation of Indorser |
| § | 3-415:1 [Rev] | Indorser’s contract |
| § | 3-415:2 [Rev] | Differences in indorser liability |
| § | 3-415:3 [Rev] | Parties to whom indorser is liable |
| § | 3-415:4 [Rev] | Discharge |
| U.C.C. § 3-416 [Rev] | Transfer Warranties |
| § | 3-416:1 [Rev] | Transferor’s warranties—In general |
| § | 3-416:2 [Rev] | Warranties on transfer—By whom given |
| § | 3-416:3 [Rev] | Transferor’s warranties—To whom given |
| § | 3-416:4 [Rev] | —Person entitled to enforce instrument |
| § | 3-416:5 [Rev] | All signatures are authentic and authorized |
| § | 3-416:6 [Rev] | No alteration |

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 lxxvii
§ 3-416:7 [Rev] No defense of any party is good against him
§ 3-416:8 [Rev] No knowledge of any insolvency proceeding
§ 3-416:9 [Rev] Breach of transferor’s warranties—Accrual of cause of action
§ 3-416:10 [Rev] Damages
U.C.C. § 3-417 [Rev] Presentment Warranties
§ 3-417:1 [Rev] Warranties on presentment—Introduction
§ 3-417:2 [Rev] Warranties on presentment and transfer mutually exclusive
§ 3-417:3 [Rev] Disclaimer of presenter’s warranties
§ 3-417:4 [Rev] Who makes presenter’s warranties and to whom made
§ 3-417:5 [Rev] Warranties made to drawee of unaccepted draft—In general
§ 3-417:6 [Rev] Warranties under Section 3-417(a) made to drawee only
§ 3-417:7 [Rev] Warranties under Section 3-417(a)—Defenses
§ 3-417:8 [Rev] —Remedy
§ 3-417:9 [Rev] Warranties made to other payors and acceptors—In general
§ 3-417:10 [Rev] Presenter’s warranty—Person entitled to enforce instrument
§ 3-417:11 [Rev] —No knowledge that drawer’s signature is unauthorized
§ 3-417:12 [Rev] —No alteration
§ 3-417:13 [Rev] Breach of presenter’s warranties—Accrual of cause of action and statute of limitations
U.C.C. § 3-418 [Rev] Payment or Acceptance by Mistake
§ 3-418:1 [Rev] Payment or acceptance by mistake—In general
§ 3-418:2 [Rev] Payor’s right of restitution and acceptor’s right to revoke acceptance
§ 3-418:3 [Rev] When bank is entitled to recovery of payment made or revocation of acceptance against nonprotected person
§ 3-418:4 [Rev] Right to revoke acceptance—Relationship between Sections 3-418 and 3-305
§ 3-418:5 [Rev] Class of persons from whom payment may not be recovered or acceptance may not be revoked
§ 3-418:6 [Rev] Relationship between payor’s right to recover
### Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 3-419 [Rev]</td>
<td>Instruments Signed for Accommodation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-419:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Accommodation parties—In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-419:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>What is accommodation party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-419:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Proof of accommodation status—What must be proved</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-419:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Notice of accommodation status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-419:5 [Rev]</td>
<td>Liability of accommodation party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-419:6 [Rev]</td>
<td>Types of defenses available to accommodation party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-419:7 [Rev]</td>
<td>Accommodation party’s defenses on underlying transactions—Lack of consideration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-419:8 [Rev]</td>
<td>Failure of condition precedent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-419:9 [Rev]</td>
<td>Special understanding with creditor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-419:10 [Rev]</td>
<td>Real defenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-419:11 [Rev]</td>
<td>Accommodated party’s defenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-419:12 [Rev]</td>
<td>Accommodated party’s rights against accommodation party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-419:13 [Rev]</td>
<td>Accommodation party’s rights against party accommodated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-419:14 [Rev]</td>
<td>Guaranty of collection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 3-420 [Rev]</td>
<td>Conversion of Instrument</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-420:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Conversion of instrument—In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-420:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Acts constituting conversion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-420:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Who may be liable for conversion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-420:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Who may bring action for conversion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-420:5 [Rev]</td>
<td>Conversion by representatives including depositary and collecting banks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-420:6 [Rev]</td>
<td>Defenses to conversion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-420:7 [Rev]</td>
<td>Damages for conversion; Statute of limitations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PART 5 [REV] DISHONOR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 3-501 [Rev]</td>
<td>Presentment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-501:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Presentment—In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-501:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>What is presentment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-501:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Where presentment can be made</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-501:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Manner of presentment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 3-501:5 [Rev]</td>
<td>Authorized demands made by person to whom presentment made</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
U.C.C. § 3-502 [Rev] Dishonor
§ 3-502:1 [Rev] In general
§ 3-502:2 [Rev] Note
§ 3-502:3 [Rev] Unaccepted drafts—Checks
§ 3-502:4 [Rev] Other unaccepted demand drafts
§ 3-502:5 [Rev] Unaccepted drafts payable on stated date
§ 3-502:6 [Rev] Unaccepted documentary drafts
§ 3-502:7 [Rev] Accepted drafts
§ 3-502:8 [Rev] When presentment is excused
U.C.C. § 3-503 [Rev] Notice of Dishonor
§ 3-503:1 [Rev] Notice of dishonor—In general
§ 3-503:2 [Rev] Timeliness of notice
§ 3-503:3 [Rev] Manner of giving notice
§ 3-503:4 [Rev] Relationship to rules of Article 4
U.C.C. § 3-504 [Rev] Excused Presentment and Notice of Dishonor
§ 3-504:1 [Rev] Excused presentment and notice of dishonor—In general
§ 3-504:2 [Rev] Delay in giving notice of dishonor—Circumstances beyond party’s control
§ 3-504:3 [Rev] Presentment excused—Reasonable diligence enough for presentment
§ 3-504:4 [Rev] —Drawer has countermanded payment or drawer or indorser has no right to require or reason to expect payment
§ 3-504:5 [Rev] Presentment and notice of dishonor excused—Waiver
§ 3-504:6 [Rev] Presentment excused—Maker or acceptor has repudiated obligation or party to pay or accept is dead or insolvent
U.C.C. § 3-505 [Rev] Evidence of Dishonor
§ 3-505:1 [Rev] Evidence of dishonor
§ 3-505:2 [Rev] Protest
§ 3-505:3 [Rev] Purported stamp or writing of drawee, payor bank or presenting bank
§ 3-505:4 [Rev] Books or records of drawee, payor bank or collecting bank

PART 6 [REV] DISCHARGE AND PAYMENT
U.C.C. § 3-601 [Rev] Discharge and Effect of Discharge
§ 3-601:1 [Rev] Discharge and effect of discharge—In general
§ 3-601:2 [Rev] Discharge available on simple contract for payment of money
§ 3-601:3 [Rev] Effect of discharge
TABLE OF CONTENTS

U.C.C. § 3-602 [Rev] Payment
§ 3-602:1 [Rev] Payment
§ 3-602:2 [Rev] Payment or satisfaction—Without notice of adverse claim
§ 3-602:3 [Rev] With knowledge of adverse claim
§ 3-602:4 [Rev] Assertion of adverse claim
U.C.C. § 3-603 [Rev] Tender of Payment
§ 3-603:1 [Rev] Tender of payment—In general
§ 3-603:2 [Rev] Effect and extent of discharge
§ 3-603:3 [Rev] What constitutes tender of payment
U.C.C. § 3-604 [Rev] Discharge by Cancellation or Renunciation
§ 3-604:1 [Rev] Discharge by cancellation or renunciation
§ 3-604:2 [Rev] Operation of cancellation, renunciation or surrender as discharge
§ 3-604:3 [Rev] Manner of cancellation
§ 3-604:4 [Rev] Manner of renunciation and surrender
§ 3-604:5 [Rev] Intent to discharge
U.C.C. § 3-605 [Rev] Discharge of Indorsers and Accommodation Parties
§ 3-605:1 [Rev] Discharge of indorsers and accommodation parties
§ 3-605:2 [Rev] Release of principal debtor
§ 3-605:3 [Rev] Extensions and modifications
§ 3-605:4 [Rev] Consent to discharge
§ 3-605:5 [Rev] Impairment of collateral—In general
§ 3-605:6 [Rev] What constitutes impairing value of collateral
§ 3-605:7 [Rev] Extent of discharge
§ 3-605:8 [Rev] Consent to impairment
§ 3-605:13 [Rev] Extensions under 2002 Official Amendments
§ 3-605:15 [Rev] Burden of proof under 2002 Official Amendments

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 lxxxi

Volume 6

ARTICLE 4 BANK DEPOSITS AND COLLECTIONS

PART 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS AND DEFINITIONS

U.C.C. § 4-101 Short Title
§ 4-101:1 Scope and purpose of Article 4
§ 4-101:2 Organization of Article 4
§ 4-101:3 Requirement of analysis under Article 3 as well as Article 4
§ 4-101:4 Check collection system—Background
§ 4-101:5 —Early law
§ 4-101:6 —New technology and recent statistics
§ 4-101:7 —Out of state checks
§ 4-101:8 Documentary drafts—Function
§ 4-101:9 —Collection
§ 4-101:10 —Drawn on bank as payor
§ 4-101:11 Collection of clean drafts and time paper
§ 4-101:12 Drafting history of Article 4
§ 4-101:13 Credit cards
§ 4-101:14 Check truncation—In general
§ 4-101:15 —Legal problems
§ 4-101:16 Electronic fund transfers—Preauthorized transfers
§ 4-101:17 —Use of bank card plus identification
§ 4-101:18 —Paying bills by telephone
§ 4-101:19 —Automated clearing houses
§ 4-101:20 —Automatic teller machines
§ 4-101:21 —“Point of sale” system
§ 4-101:22 —Check guarantees, credit card authorization and home banking
§ 4-101:23 —Interbank communication for large payment transactions
§ 4-101:24 —Volume and future prospects
§ 4-101:25 New Payments Code—Background, purpose and organization
§ 4-101:26 —Proposed changes in rules for consumers
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 4-101:27 —Additional comments
U.C.C. § 4-102 Applicability
§ 4-102:1 Interaction with Article 3
§ 4-102:2 Interaction with Article 8
§ 4-102:3 Conflict of laws
§ 4-102:4 Effect on branch banking
U.C.C. § 4-103 Variation by Agreement; Measure of Damages; Certain Action Constituting Ordinary Care
§ 4-103:1 In general
§ 4-103:2 Consensual agreements
§ 4-103:3 Limitations on freedom of contract
§ 4-103:4 Statutory agreements
§ 4-103:5 Actions constituting ordinary care per se
§ 4-103:6 Actions constituting prima facie ordinary care
§ 4-103:7 Conduct not covered by the Code but reasonable in the circumstances
§ 4-103:8 Measure of damages for failure to exercise ordinary care—Collecting banks
§ 4-103:9 —Payor banks
§ 4-103:10 —Consequential and punitive damages
U.C.C. § 4-104 Definitions and Index of Definitions
§ 4-104:1 In general
§ 4-104:2 “Item” defined; Paper and electronic messages
§ 4-104:3 Other definitions
§ 4-105:1 What is a bank for Article 4 purposes
§ 4-105:2 Depositary banks
§ 4-105:3 Payor banks
§ 4-105:4 Other banks
U.C.C. § 4-106 Separate Office of a Bank
§ 4-106:1 Time limits and separate bank status
§ 4-106:2 Processing centers and correspondent bank processing
§ 4-106:3 Effect of notices or orders
U.C.C. § 4-107 Time of Receipt of Items
§ 4-107:1 In general
U.C.C. § 4-108 Delays
§ 4-108:1 The “One Day Rule”—Who can give and who can receive
§ 4-108:2 —Effect of extension
§ 4-108:3 —Limitations on the power to extend

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 4-108:4  The “Force Majeure Rule”—Causes for the extension
§ 4-108:5  —Limitations on the extension of time
§ 4-108:6  —The required diligence
U.C.C. § 4-109 Process of Posting
§ 4-109:1  Chronology of the process of payment
§ 4-109:2  Mechanical elements
§ 4-109:3  Record keeping steps
§ 4-109:4  Judgmental steps
§ 4-109:5  Omitting listed steps
§ 4-109:6  Adding other steps
§ 4-109:7  Classifying items for different processes of posting
§ 4-109:8  Correcting or reversing entries
§ 4-109:9  Standing to challenge departure from usual procedure
§ 4-109:10 Determining when process of posting is completed
§ 4-109:11 Significance of completion of the process of posting

PART 2 COLLECTION OF ITEMS: DEPOSITARY AND COLLECTING BANKS
U.C.C. § 4-201 Presumption and Duration of Agency Status of Collecting Banks and Provisional Status of Credits; Applicability of Article; Item Indorsed “Pay Any Bank”
§ 4-201:1  Common-law background
§ 4-201:2  General rule for agency status
§ 4-201:3  Agency and holder status
§ 4-201:4  Rebutting the presumption of agency
§ 4-201:5  Collecting bank’s right to advances or setoff
§ 4-201:6  Effect of “pay any bank” indorsement
U.C.C. § 4-202 Responsibility for Collection; When Action Seasonable
§ 4-202:1  Responsibility to use ordinary care
§ 4-202:2  Duty to present or send for presentment
§ 4-202:3  Duty to send notice of dishonor or nonpayment
§ 4-202:4  Learning that an item has not been paid or accepted
§ 4-202:5  Duty to make or provide for any necessary protest
§ 4-202:6  Duty to settle
§ 4-202:7  When collecting bank acts seasonably
§ 4-202:8  Liability for conduct of others
U.C.C. § 4-203 Effect of Instructions
§ 4-203:1  In general
§ 4-203:2  Form of instructions; Restrictive indorsement
U.C.C. § 4-204 Methods of Sending and Presenting; Sending Direct to Payor Bank
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-204:1</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-204:2</td>
<td>Circuitous routing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-204:3</td>
<td>Effect of relevant instructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-204:4</td>
<td>Direct sending</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-204:5</td>
<td>Off-premises presentment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 4-205</td>
<td>Supplying Missing Indorsement; No Notice from Prior Indorsement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-205:1</td>
<td>Supplying missing indorsement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-205:2</td>
<td>Effect of supplying indorsement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-205:3</td>
<td>Effect of indorsing an item for a customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-205:4</td>
<td>Joint payees</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-205:5</td>
<td>Effect of restrictive indorsement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 4-206</td>
<td>Transfer Between Banks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-206:1</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-206:2</td>
<td>Determining when a transfer is between banks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 4-207</td>
<td>Warranties of Customer and Collecting Bank on Transfer or Presentment of Items; Time for Claims</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:1</td>
<td>Article 4 warranties in general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:2</td>
<td>Relationship with Article 3 warranties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:3</td>
<td>Exclusivity of warranties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:4</td>
<td>Presentment warranties—By whom given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:5</td>
<td>—To whom given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:6</td>
<td>—Good title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:7</td>
<td>—Lack of knowledge of unauthorized signature of maker or drawer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:8</td>
<td>—Lack of material alteration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:9</td>
<td>—Statute of limitations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:10</td>
<td>—Damages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:11</td>
<td>Transfer warranties—By whom given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:12</td>
<td>—To whom given</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:13</td>
<td>—Good title and rightful transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:14</td>
<td>—All signatures are genuine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:15</td>
<td>—No material alteration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:16</td>
<td>—No defense of any party is good against him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:17</td>
<td>—No knowledge of insolvency proceeding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:18</td>
<td>—Terms of engagement of the nonindorser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:19</td>
<td>—Statute of limitations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-207:20</td>
<td>—Damages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 4-208</td>
<td>Security Interest of Collecting Bank in Items, Accompanying Documents and Proceeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-208:1</td>
<td>Security interest in deposited items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-208:2</td>
<td>Credit given or applied</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 4-208:3 Credit available as of right
§ 4-208:4 Advances made against an item
§ 4-208:5 Extent of security interest where several items received
§ 4-208:6 Type of security interest
U.C.C. § 4-209 When Bank Gives Value for Purposes of Holder in Due Course
§ 4-209:1 Bank as a holder in due course in general
§ 4-209:2 Value
§ 4-209:3 Relationship with Article 3's taking for value provision
U.C.C. § 4-210 Presentment by Notice of Item Not Payable by, Through or at a Bank; Liability of Secondary Parties
§ 4-210:1 Presentment by notice
§ 4-210:2 Time of dishonor
U.C.C. § 4-211 Media of Remittance; Provisional and Final Settlement in Remittance Cases
§ 4-211:1 Media of remittance
§ 4-211:2 Authorized forms of settlement
§ 4-211:3 Timely action by collecting bank
§ 4-211:4 Final settlement in remittance cases
U.C.C. § 4-212 Right of Charge-Back or Refund
§ 4-212:1 In general
§ 4-212:2 Conditions precedent to charge-back or refund
§ 4-212:3 Time of charge-back or refund
§ 4-212:4 Effect of failure to charge-back or refund
§ 4-212:5 Termination of right of charge-back or refund
§ 4-212:6 Depositary bank’s right of charge-back or refund; “On-us” items
§ 4-212:7 Direct return of unpaid item
§ 4-212:8 Charge-back of items payable in foreign currency
§ 4-212:9 Effect of failure to use ordinary care on right of charge-back
U.C.C. § 4-213 Final Payment of Item by Payor Bank; When Provisional Debits and Credits Become Final; When Certain Credits Become Available for Withdrawal
§ 4-213:1 Final payment defined
§ 4-213:2 Final payment in cash
§ 4-213:3 Final payment by settling without right to revoke
§ 4-213:4 Final payment by completing the process of posting
§ 4-213:5 Final payment by failure to revoke provisional settlement
Table of Contents

§ 4-213:6 Final payment and accountability
§ 4-213:7 Effect of final payment on chain of provisional credits
§ 4-213:8 Final payment and collecting bank’s accountability
§ 4-213:9 Time when credit becomes available for withdrawal as of right
§ 4-213:10 Deposit of money; When available for withdrawal as of right

U.C.C. § 4-214 Insolvency and Preference
§ 4-214:1 Insolvency of payor or collecting bank
§ 4-214:2 Return of items not finally paid
§ 4-214:3 Payor bank’s insolvency after final payment but before final settlement
§ 4-214:4 Effect of insolvency upon provisional settlement
§ 4-214:5 Collecting bank’s insolvency after final settlement
§ 4-214:6 Inapplicability to national banks

PART 3 COLLECTION OF ITEMS: PAYOR BANKS
U.C.C. § 4-301 Deferred Posting; Recovery of Payment by Return of Items; Time of Dishonor
§ 4-301:1 The pre-Code law and the deferred posting statutes
§ 4-301:2 Items covered consistently with UCC § 4-302(a)
§ 4-301:3 Requirement of provisional settlement
§ 4-301:4 Revocation of provisional settlement before final payment
§ 4-301:5 Return or written notice of nonpayment as revocation of settlement
§ 4-301:6 When an item is received
§ 4-301:7 When an item is returned
§ 4-301:8 When an item is dishonored
§ 4-301:9 The rule for “on-us” items

U.C.C. § 4-302 Payor Bank’s Responsibility for Late Return of Item
§ 4-302:1 History and policy of section
§ 4-302:2 The two time limits for demand items other than documentary drafts
§ 4-302:3 Effect of notice in lieu of return
§ 4-302:4 Defenses in the case of failure of timely return of demand items other than documentary drafts
§ 4-302:5 Payor bank’s responsibility for late return, represented former demand items
§ 4-302:6 Retention rule in case of failure of timely return of “other items”
§ 4-302:7 Nature of the liability under the section

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 lxxxvii
U.C.C. § 4-303 When Items Subject to Notice, Stop-Order, Legal Process or Setoff; Order in Which Items May Be Charged or Certified

§ 4-303:1 When items are subject to notice, stop-order, legal process or setoff in general

§ 4-303:2 The order in which items may be charged to the account

PART 4 RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN PAYOR BANK AND ITS CUSTOMER

U.C.C. § 4-401 When Bank May Charge Customer’s Account

§ 4-401:1 Bank customer account

§ 4-401:2 When is an item “properly payable”? 

§ 4-401:3 Charge to account

§ 4-401:4 —Termination of right to charge

§ 4-401:5 —Altered, misencoded and completed items

U.C.C. § 4-402 Bank’s Liability to Customer for Wrongful Dishonor

§ 4-402:1 Pre-Code law; Origins

§ 4-402:2 Code approach

§ 4-402:3 Liability to the customer

§ 4-402:4 Actions constituting wrongful dishonor

§ 4-402:5 Actions constituting wrongful action by mistake

§ 4-402:6 “Trader Rule”—Analysis

§ 4-402:7 —Code provision and case law

§ 4-402:8 Damages—Compensatory

§ 4-402:9 —Punitive

§ 4-402:10 Mitigation of damages

§ 4-402:11 Effect of erroneous reason for return

U.C.C. § 4-403 Customer’s Right to Stop Payment; Burden of Proof of Loss

§ 4-403:1 Policies underlying right to stop payment

§ 4-403:2 Theory of right to stop payment

§ 4-403:3 Who may stop payment

§ 4-403:4 Place of giving order

§ 4-403:5 Manner of giving order

§ 4-403:6 Timeliness of stop order

§ 4-403:7 Content of stop payment order

§ 4-403:8 Prima facie case

§ 4-403:9 Recovery by holder of stopped check

§ 4-403:10 Damages and interrelation with Section 4-407

§ 4-403:11 Cashier’s checks and certified checks

§ 4-403:12 Teller’s checks
Table of Contents

§ 4-403:13 Money orders and traveler’s checks
U.C.C. § 4-404 Bank Not Obligated to Pay Check More Than Six Months Old
§ 4-404:1 Stale checks—Extent of duty to inquire
U.C.C. § 4-405 Death or Incompetence of Customer
§ 4-405:1 Effect of death, insanity or insolvency of drawer
§ 4-405:2 Payment or refusal of payment with knowledge of death
§ 4-405:3 Death or adjudication of incompetence of a payee
U.C.C. § 4-406 Customer’s Duty to Discover and Report Unauthorized Signature or Alteration
§ 4-406:1 Background
§ 4-406:2 Bank actions precedent to customer’s duty to examine and report
§ 4-406:3 Customer’s required examination
§ 4-406:4 Effect of entrusting examination to an agent
§ 4-406:5 Timing and content of customer’s reports
§ 4-406:6 Duties of customer with respect to alterations, unauthorized indorsements, and other matters
§ 4-406:7 Customer’s reply to bank’s claim of preclusion
§ 4-406:8 Notice-bar order
§ 4-406:9 “No-Waiver” of defenses rule
§ 4-406:10 Provisions in proposed New Payments Code
U.C.C. § 4-407 Payor Bank’s Right to Subrogation on Improper Payment
§ 4-407:1 Payor bank’s right to subrogation on improper payment
§ 4-407:2 Position of holder in due course
§ 4-407:3 Payment subject to objection
§ 4-407:4 Interpleader and impleader
§ 4-407:5 Other remedies for improper bank payments

PART 5 COLLECTION OF DOCUMENTARY DRAFTS
U.C.C. § 4-501 Handling of Documentary Drafts; Duty to Send for Presentment and to Notify Customer of Dishonor
§ 4-501:1 Handling of documentary drafts; Overview
§ 4-501:2 Determining the payor and time for payment
§ 4-501:3 Duty to present and notify of nonpayment
U.C.C. § 4-502 Presentment of “On Arrival” Drafts
§ 4-502:1 On arrival drafts—Nonbank payors
§ 4-502:2 —Bank payors
U.C.C. § 4-503 Responsibility of Presenting Bank for Documents
Volume 6A

ARTICLE 4 [REV] BANK DEPOSITS AND COLLECTIONS

PART 1 [REV] GENERAL PROVISIONS AND DEFINITIONS

U.C.C. § 4-101 [Rev] Short Title
§ 4-101:1 [Rev] Short title—Introduction
§ 4-101:2 [Rev] Scope and purpose of Article 4
§ 4-101:3 [Rev] Consumer protection
§ 4-101:4 [Rev] Cash and noncash items
§ 4-101:5 [Rev] Organization of Article 4

U.C.C. § 4-102 [Rev] Applicability
§ 4-102:1 [Rev] Applicability
§ 4-102:2 [Rev] Conflicts between Articles 3 and 4
§ 4-102:3 [Rev] Conflicts between Articles 8 and 4
§ 4-102:4 [Rev] Preemption by federal law
§ 4-102:5 [Rev] Conflict of laws

U.C.C. § 4-103 [Rev] Variation by Agreement; Measure of Damages; Action Constituting Ordinary Care
§ 4-103:1 [Rev] Variation by agreement
§ 4-103:2 [Rev] Federal reserve regulations and operating circulars, clearing-house rules and like
§ 4-103:3 [Rev] On whom binding
§ 4-103:4 [Rev] Limitation on agreements varying Article 4
§ 4-103:5 [Rev] Prima facie exercise of ordinary care
§ 4-103:6 [Rev] Measure of damages for failure to exercise ordinary care

U.C.C. § 4-104 [Rev] Definitions and Index of Definitions
§ 4-104:1 [Rev] Definitions and index of definitions
§ 4-104:2 [Rev] Clearing house
§ 4-104:3 [Rev] Draft and drawee
§ 4-104:4 [Rev] Midnight deadline
§ 4-104:5 [Rev] Settle
§ 4-104:6 [Rev] Item
§ 4-104:7 [Rev] Account
§ 4-104:8 [Rev] Documentary drafts
U.C.C. § 4-105 [Rev] Definitions of Types of Banks
§ 4-105:1 [Rev] “Bank”
§ 4-105:2 [Rev] Depositary banks
§ 4-105:3 [Rev] Payor bank; Paying bank
§ 4-105:4 [Rev] Intermediary banks, collecting banks, presenting banks and returning banks
U.C.C. § 4-106 [Rev] Payable Through or Payable at Bank: Collecting Bank
§ 4-106:1 [Rev] Payable through bank item
§ 4-106:2 [Rev] When item is “payable through” bank
§ 4-106:3 [Rev] Duties of bank through which item is payable
§ 4-106:4 [Rev] Domiciled instruments
§ 4-106:5 [Rev] Alternative A
§ 4-106:6 [Rev] Alternative B
§ 4-106:7 [Rev] Ambiguity as to status of bank as payor bank or collecting bank
U.C.C. § 4-107 [Rev] Separate Office of Bank
§ 4-107:1 [Rev] Separate office of bank
U.C.C. § 4-108 [Rev] Time of Receipt of Items
§ 4-108:1 [Rev] Time of receipt of items
U.C.C. § 4-109 [Rev] Delays
§ 4-109:1 [Rev] Delays
§ 4-109:2 [Rev] Collecting bank’s effort to secure payment from nonbank payor
§ 4-109:3 [Rev] Excusable delays
U.C.C. § 4-110 [Rev] Electronic Presentment
§ 4-110:1 [Rev] Electronic presentment—Check truncation
§ 4-110:2 [Rev] Agreements for electronic presentment
U.C.C. § 4-111 [Rev] Statute of Limitations
§ 4-111:1 [Rev] Statute of limitations

PART 2 [REV] COLLECTION OF ITEMS: DEPOSITARY AND COLLECTING BANKS
U.C.C. § 4-201 [Rev] Status of Collecting Bank as Agent and Provisional Status of Credits; Applicability of Article; Item Indorsed “Pay Any Bank”
§ 4-201:1 [Rev] Status of collecting bank as agent
§ 4-201:2 [Rev] Advantages of collecting bank’s simultaneous status as agent and holder in due course

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 4-201:3 [Rev] When collecting bank is agent for its customer; Subagency

§ 4-201:4 [Rev] When collecting bank’s agency status ends

§ 4-201:5 [Rev] Collecting bank’s right to advances or setoffs

§ 4-201:6 [Rev] “Pay any bank” indorsement

U.C.C. § 4-202 [Rev] Responsibility for Collection or Return; When Action Timely

§ 4-202:1 [Rev] Responsibility for collection or return

§ 4-202:2 [Rev] Ordinary care

§ 4-202:3 [Rev] Duty of collecting bank to act seasonably

§ 4-202:4 [Rev] Duties of depositary bank under Regulation CC

§ 4-202:5 [Rev] Duties of returning bank under Regulation CC

§ 4-202:6 [Rev] Breach of warranty by returning banks


§ 4-202:8 [Rev] —Substitute checks

§ 4-202:9 [Rev] Reconverting bank warranties

§ 4-202:10 [Rev] Damages for breach of warranty

§ 4-202:11 [Rev] Consumer rights

§ 4-202:12 [Rev] Consumer’s bank’s right to expedited recredit

U.C.C. § 4-203 [Rev] Effect of Instructions

§ 4-203:1 [Rev] Effect of instructions

§ 4-203:2 [Rev] Form of instruction

§ 4-203:3 [Rev] Exceptions

U.C.C. § 4-204 [Rev] Methods of Sending and Presenting; Sending Directly to Payor Bank

§ 4-204:1 [Rev] Methods of sending and presenting

§ 4-204:2 [Rev] Authorized methods

U.C.C. § 4-205 [Rev] Depositary Bank Holder of Unindorsed Item

§ 4-205:1 [Rev] Depositary bank’s holder status when in possession of unindorsed item: Purpose of dispensing with requirement of indorsement by customer

§ 4-205:2 [Rev] Depositary bank holder of unindorsed item

§ 4-205:3 [Rev] Warranties by depositary bank

U.C.C. § 4-206 [Rev] Transfer Between Banks

§ 4-206:1 [Rev] Transfer between banks

U.C.C. § 4-207 [Rev] Transfer Warranties

§ 4-207:1 [Rev] Transferor’s warranties—In general

§ 4-207:2 [Rev] Liability of transferor for payment of item upon dishonor
| § 4-207:3 [Rev] | Warranties on transfer—By whom and to whom given? |
| § 4-207:4 [Rev] | Transferor’s warranties—Person entitled to enforce the instrument |
| § 4-207:5 [Rev] | All signatures are authentic and authorized |
| § 4-207:6 [Rev] | No alteration |
| § 4-207:7 [Rev] | No defense of any party is good against him |
| § 4-207:8 [Rev] | No knowledge of any insolvency proceeding |
| § 4-207:9 [Rev] | Breach of transferor’s warranties—Accrual of cause of action |
| § 4-207:10 [Rev] | Damages |
| U.C.C. § 4-208 [Rev] | Presentment Warranties |
| § 4-208:1 [Rev] | Warranties on presentment—Introduction |
| § 4-208:2 [Rev] | Warranties on presentment and transfer mutually exclusive |
| § 4-208:3 [Rev] | Disclaimer of presenter’s warranties |
| § 4-208:4 [Rev] | Makers of presenter’s warranties; Beneficiaries |
| § 4-208:5 [Rev] | Warranties made to drawee of unaccepted draft—Generally |
| § 4-208:6 [Rev] | Warranties under Section 4-208(a) made to drawee only |
| § 4-208:7 [Rev] | Defenses to breach of warranty |
| § 4-208:8 [Rev] | Remedy for breach of warranty under Section 4-208(a) |
| § 4-208:9 [Rev] | Warranties made to other payors and acceptors—Generally |
| § 4-208:10 [Rev] | Presenter’s warranty—Person entitled to enforce item |
| § 4-208:11 [Rev] | —No knowledge that drawer’s signature is unauthorized |
| § 4-208:12 [Rev] | —No alteration |
| § 4-208:13 [Rev] | Breach of presenter’s warranties—Accrual of cause of action and statute of limitations |
| U.C.C. § 4-209 [Rev] | Encoding and Retention Warranties |
| § 4-209:1 [Rev] | Encoding warranties |
| § 4-209:2 [Rev] | Application of encoding warranty |
| § 4-209:3 [Rev] | Damages for breach of encoding warranty |
| § 4-209:4 [Rev] | Retention warranties |
| § 4-209:5 [Rev] | Regulation CC: Warranty of settlement amount, offset, and preference |
| § 4-209:7 [Rev] | —Substitute checks |

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018  xciiii
§ 4-209:8 [Rev] Reconverting bank warranties
§ 4-209:9 [Rev] Damages for breach of warranty
§ 4-209:10 [Rev] Consumer rights
§ 4-209:11 [Rev] Consumer’s bank’s right to expedited recredit

§ 4-210:1 [Rev] Security interest of collecting bank in items, accompanying documents and procedures
§ 4-210:2 [Rev] Credit given or applied
§ 4-210:3 [Rev] Withdrawal as matter of right
§ 4-210:4 [Rev] Advances against item
§ 4-210:5 [Rev] Extent of security interest where several items received

U.C.C. § 4-211 [Rev] When Bank Gives Value for Purposes of Holder in Due Course
§ 4-211:1 [Rev] When bank gives value for purposes of holder in due course status

U.C.C. § 4-212 [Rev] Presentment by Notice of Item not Payable by, Through, or at Bank; Liability of Drawer or Indorser
§ 4-212:1 [Rev] Presentment by notice of item not payable by, through or at bank; Liability of drawer or indorser

U.C.C. § 4-213 [Rev] Medium and Time of Settlement by Bank
§ 4-213:1 [Rev] Medium of settlement by bank
§ 4-213:2 [Rev] Time of settlement
§ 4-213:3 [Rev] When settlement becomes final

U.C.C. § 4-214 [Rev] Right of Charge-Back or Refund; Liability of Collecting Bank; Return of Item
§ 4-214:1 [Rev] Right to charge-back or refund—Introduction
§ 4-214:2 [Rev] Collecting bank’s right to charge-back or refund—When right arises
§ 4-214:3 [Rev] Effect on other rights of collecting banks
§ 4-214:4 [Rev] Requirements for charge-back or refund
§ 4-214:5 [Rev] When item has been returned or notice of nonpayment has been sent
§ 4-214:6 [Rev] Charge-back of items payable in foreign currency

U.C.C. § 4-215 [Rev] Final Payment of Item by Payor Bank; When Provisional Debits and Credits Become Final; When Certain Credits Become Available for Withdrawal
§ 4-215:1 [Rev] Final payment of item by payor bank; Introduction; Consequences of final payment

§ 4-215:2 [Rev] Payment in cash

§ 4-215:3 [Rev] Final payment—Settling without reserving right to revoke

§ 4-215:4 [Rev] —Provisional settlements for item

§ 4-215:5 [Rev] Relationship between final settlement and final payment

§ 4-215:6 [Rev] Right to withdraw funds

§ 4-215:7 [Rev] Need for Regulation CC's fund availability rules

§ 4-215:8 [Rev] Regulation CC's changes in collection process

§ 4-215:9 [Rev] Funds availability schedules under Regulation CC—Introduction

§ 4-215:10 [Rev] Institutions bound to comply with mandatory availability schedules—Definitions

§ 4-215:11 [Rev] Mandatory funds availability schedule—Introduction

§ 4-215:12 [Rev] —Next day availability

§ 4-215:13 [Rev] —Second-day and fifth-day availability

§ 4-215:14 [Rev] —One day extension for cash withdrawals and case-by-case extensions

§ 4-215:15 [Rev] —Exceptions for new accounts; Large deposits; Returned checks; Repeated overdrafts; Doubts as to collectibility; Emergency conditions

§ 4-215:16 [Rev] Disclosure of availability policy

§ 4-215:17 [Rev] Liability for violation of subpart B of Regulation CC

U.C.C. § 4-216 [Rev] Insolvency and Preference

§ 4-216:1 [Rev] Insolvency and preference—Scope

§ 4-216:2 [Rev] Application

PART 3 [REV] COLLECTION OF ITEMS: PAYOR BANKS

U.C.C. § 4-301 [Rev] Posting; Recovery of Payment by Return of Items; Time of Dishonor; Return of Items by Payor Bank

§ 4-301:1 [Rev] Deferred posting

§ 4-301:2 [Rev] Exceptions: Documentary drafts, on-us items, items presented over counter

§ 4-301:3 [Rev] Duty to settle on day of receipt

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 xcv
§ 4-301:4 [Rev] Right to revoke settlement: Returning item or sending notice of nonpayment
§ 4-301:5 [Rev] When item dishonored
§ 4-301:6 [Rev] Duties of payor banks under Regulation CC: Expeditious return
§ 4-301:7 [Rev] Regulation CC: Notice of nonpayment
§ 4-301:8 [Rev] Liability for violation of paying bank’s duties of expeditious return and sending notice of nonpayment
§ 4-301:9 [Rev] Paying bank’s warranty on return items
U.C.C. § 4-302 [Rev] Payor’s Bank Responsibility for Late Return of Item
§ 4-302:1 [Rev] Payor bank’s responsibility for late return of item
§ 4-302:2 [Rev] Payor bank’s responsibility for late return of demand items
§ 4-302:3 [Rev] Documentary drafts and items not payable on demand
§ 4-302:4 [Rev] When item is properly payable
§ 4-302:5 [Rev] Time within which payor bank must act under Section 4-302(a)(2)
§ 4-302:6 [Rev] Accountability and defenses
§ 4-302:7 [Rev] Extensions and reductions of midnight deadline
U.C.C. § 4-303 [Rev] When Items Subject to Notice, Stop-Payment Order, Legal Process, or Setoff; Order in Which Items May Be Changed or Certified
§ 4-303:1 [Rev] Battle between bank’s duty and right to pay item and stop-payment orders, writs of garnishment, notices and set offs
§ 4-303:2 [Rev] Timeliness of stop-payment orders, writs of garnishment, notices and set offs
§ 4-303:3 [Rev] Consequences of timely and untimely arrival of legal process
§ 4-303:4 [Rev] Right of bank to pay checks in any order
§ 4-303:5 [Rev] Bank’s right of setoff

PART 4 [REV] RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN PAYOR BANK AND ITS CUSTOMER
U.C.C. § 4-401 [Rev] When Bank May Charge Customer’s Account
§ 4-401:1 [Rev] When bank may charge customer’s account—Properly payable items
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section Reference</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-401:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Items creating overdrafts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-401:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Banks right to charge account for altered or incomplete instruments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-401:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Postdated checks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 4-402 [Rev]</td>
<td>Bank's Liability to Customer for Wrongful Dishonor, Time of Determining Insufficient of Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-402:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Bank's liability to customer for wrongful dishonor; Time of determining sufficiency of account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-402:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>What is wrongful dishonor—Must item be dishonored?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-402:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>What is properly payable item?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-402:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Time for determining account balance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-402:5 [Rev]</td>
<td>Duty owed only to customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-402:6 [Rev]</td>
<td>Damages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 4-403 [Rev]</td>
<td>Customer's Right to Stop Payment; Burden of Proof of Loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-403:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Customer's right to stop payment; Burden of proof of loss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-403:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Who may stop payment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-403:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Requirements for stop-payment order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-403:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Effective time for stop-payment orders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-403:5 [Rev]</td>
<td>The effect of stop-payment orders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-403:6 [Rev]</td>
<td>Damages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 4-404 [Rev]</td>
<td>Bank Not Obliged to Pay Check More Than Six Months Old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-404:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Bank not obligated to pay check six months old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-404:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Right of bank to pay stale check</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 4-405 [Rev]</td>
<td>Death or Incompetence of Customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-405:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Death or incompetence of customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-405:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Incompetency of customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-405:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Death of customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-405:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Right of parties in interest to stop payment after death</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 4-406 [Rev]</td>
<td>Customer's Duty to Discover and Report Unauthorized Signature or Alteration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-406:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Customer's duty to review bank statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-406:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Customer's duty to examine statement and report own unauthorized signature and alterations—When duty arises</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-406:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Duty of bank to return items</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 4-406:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Duty of customer once statement and items are made available to him</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 4-406:5 [Rev] Effect of customer failing to exercise ordinary care—Bank's duty to prove loss
§ 4-406:6 [Rev] Repeat alterations or forgeries by same wrongdoer
§ 4-406:7 [Rev] Comparative negligence
§ 4-406:8 [Rev] Automatic time limitation on customer
§ 4-406:9 [Rev] Obligation of payor bank to raise Section 4-406 defense
U.C.C. § 4-407 [Rev] Payor Bank's Right to Subrogation on Improper Payment
§ 4-407:1 [Rev] Payor bank's right of subrogation on improper payment
§ 4-407:2 [Rev] Bank's right of subrogation
§ 4-407:3 [Rev] Situations in which bank has subrogation rights

PART 5 [REV] COLLECTION OF DOCUMENTARY DRAFTS
U.C.C. § 4-501 [Rev] Handling of Documentary Drafts; Duty to Send for Presentment and to Notify Customer of Dishonor
§ 4-501:1 [Rev] Handling of documentary drafts—Overview
§ 4-501:2 [Rev] Duty to send for presentment and to notify customer of dishonor
§ 4-502:1 [Rev] Presentment of “on arrival” drafts
U.C.C. § 4-503 [Rev] Responsibility of Presenting Bank for Documents and Goods; Report of Reasons for Dishonor; Referee in Case of Need
§ 4-503:1 [Rev] Presenting banks responsibility for documents and goods; Report of reasons for dishonor; Referee in case of need
U.C.C. § 4-504 [Rev] Privilege of Presenting Bank to Deal with Goods; Security Interest for Expenses
§ 4-504:1 [Rev] Privilege of presenting bank to deal with goods; Security interest for expenses

ARTICLE 4A FUNDS TRANSFERS

PART 1 SUBJECT MATTER AND DEFINITIONS
U.C.C. § 4A-101 Short Title
§ 4A-101:1 Short title and methodology
U.C.C. § 4A-102 Subject Matter
§ 4A-102:1 Subject matter defined as “funds transfer”
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 4A-102:2 Exclusions and preemption
§ 4A-102:3 Federal Reserve adoption
U.C.C. § 4A-103 Payment Order—Definitions
§ 4A-103:1 Payment order definitions, generally
§ 4A-103:2 “Payment order”
§ 4A-103:3 “Beneficiary” and “beneficiary’s bank”
§ 4A-103:4 “Receiving bank”
§ 4A-103:5 “Sender”
§ 4A-103:6 Instructions containing several payments to a beneficiary
U.C.C. § 4A-104 Funds Transfer—Definitions
§ 4A-104:1 “Funds transfer”
§ 4A-104:2 “Intermediary bank”
§ 4A-104:3 “Originator”
§ 4A-104:4 “Originator’s bank”
U.C.C. § 4A-105 Other Definitions
§ 4A-105:1 “Authorized account”
§ 4A-105:2 “Bank”
§ 4A-105:3 “Customer”
§ 4A-105:4 “Funds-transfer business day”
§ 4A-105:5 “Funds-transfer system”
§ 4A-105:6 “Good faith”
§ 4A-105:7 “Prove”
§ 4A-105:8 Article 1 incorporation by reference
U.C.C. § 4A-106 Time Payment Order is Received
§ 4A-106:1 Time payment order or communication cancelling or amending payment orders is received
§ 4A-106:2 Receipt outside of funds transfer day
§ 4A-106:3 Date of required actions
U.C.C. § 4A-107 Federal Reserve Regulations and Operating Circulars
§ 4A-107:1 Regulations of Board of Governors of Federal Reserve System
§ 4A-107:2 Operating circulars of Federal Reserve Banks
U.C.C. § 4A-108 Relationship to Electronic Fund Transfer Act
§ 4A-108:1 Electronic Funds Transfer Act (EFTA)
§ 4A-108:2 Other consumer transactions

PART 2 ISSUE AND ACCEPTANCE OF PAYMENT ORDER
U.C.C. § 4A-201 Security Procedure
§ 4A-201:1 Concept of security procedure
§ 4A-201:2 Algorithms or other codes
§ 4A-201:3 Identifying words or numbers

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018  xcix
§ 4A-201:4 Encryption
§ 4A-201:5 Callback procedures
U.C.C. § 4A-202 Authorized and Verified Payment Orders
§ 4A-202:1 Authorized order
§ 4A-202:2 Authorization by verification pursuant to security procedure
§ 4A-202:3 Commercial reasonableness
§ 4A-202:4 “Sender”
§ 4A-202:5 Variation by agreement
§ 4A-202:6 Amendments and cancellations
§ 4A-202:7 Notice at time and in manner affording bank reasonable opportunity to act
U.C.C. § 4A-203 Unenforceability of Certain Verified Payment Orders
§ 4A-203:1 Verified payment orders
§ 4A-203:2 Limitation by written agreement
§ 4A-203:3 Limitation by proof of lack of customer fault
§ 4A-203:4 Amendments of payment orders
§ 4A-203:5 Information facilitating breach of security procedure; “Access device, computer software, or the like”
U.C.C. § 4A-204 Refund of Payment and Duty of Customer to Report With Respect to Unauthorized Payment Order
§ 4A-204:1 Receiving bank’s duty to refund amount received for some payment orders
§ 4A-204:2 Duty of customer to report unauthorized payment orders
§ 4A-204:3 Duty to exercise ordinary care
§ 4A-204:4 Receiving bank’s rights if customer fails to act
§ 4A-204:5 Reasonable time
§ 4A-204:6 Variation by agreement
U.C.C. § 4A-205 Erroneous Payment Orders
§ 4A-205:1 Sender liability for erroneous payment orders transmitted pursuant to security procedure
§ 4A-205:2 Sender’s duty to discover erroneous payment order
§ 4A-205:3 Application of U.C.C. § 4A-205 to amendments
§ 4A-205:4 Law governing mistake and restitution
§ 4A-205:5 Variation by agreement
U.C.C. § 4A-206 Transmission of Payment Order Through Funds-Transfer or Other Communication System
§ 4A-206:1 Transmission of payment order to third-party communication system
Table of Contents

§ 4A-206:2  Effect of discrepancy in payment order
§ 4A-206:3  Application of section to Federal Reserve Banks
§ 4A-206:4  Application of section Federal Reserve Banks—
           Cancellations and amendments of payment
           orders

U.C.C. §  4A-207 Misdescription of Beneficiary
§ 4A-207:1  Nonexistent or unidentifiable beneficiary or
           account
§ 4A-207:2  Payment order identifying two different persons
§ 4A-207:3  Rules for payment order accepted under U.C.C.
           § 4A-207(b)(1)
§ 4A-207:4  Rights and obligations with respect to person paid
           under U.C.C. § 4A-207(b)(1) but not entitled to
           receive payment
§ 4A-207:5  Law governing mistake and restitution

U.C.C. §  4A-208 Misdescription of Intermediary Bank or
           Beneficiary's Bank
§ 4A-208:1  Identification of intermediary bank or receiving
           bank by identifying number only
§ 4A-208:2  Identification of intermediary bank or receiving
           bank by name and identifying number which
           identify different persons
§ 4A-208:3  Effect of receiving bank’s knowledge that name
           and identifying number identify different
           persons

U.C.C. §  4A-209 Acceptance of Payment Order
§ 4A-209:1  Acceptance of payment order by bank other than
           beneficiary’s bank
§ 4A-209:2  Acceptance of payment order by beneficiary's bank
§ 4A-209:3  When acceptance occurs
§ 4A-209:4  Definition of premature acceptance of payment
           order by originator's bank
§ 4A-209:5  Effect of premature acceptance of payment order

U.C.C. §  4A-210 Rejection of Payment Order
§ 4A-210:1  Manner of rejecting payment order
§ 4A-210:2  When rejection of payment order is effective
§ 4A-210:3  Agreement on means of rejection
§ 4A-210:4  Interest liability for failure of nonbeneficiary bank
           to execute or reject payment order
§ 4A-210:5  Rejection rules of Federal Reserve Banks

U.C.C. §  4A-211 Cancellation and Amendment of Payment Order
§ 4A-211:1  Means of cancelling or amending payment order
§ 4A-211:2  Effectiveness of communications that attempt to
           cancel or amend an unaccepted payment order
§ 4A-211:3 Effectiveness of communications that attempt to cancel or amend an accepted payment order
§ 4A-211:4 Law governing mistake and restitution
§ 4A-211:5 Cancellation of unaccepted payment order by passage of time
§ 4A-211:6 Effect of cancellation or amendment of payment order
§ 4A-211:7 Sender’s liability to receiving bank for cancellation or amendment of accepted payment order
§ 4A-211:8 Effect of death or legal incapacity of sender on payment order
§ 4A-211:9 Effect of funds-transfer system rule which conflicts with U.C.C. § 4A-211(c)(2)

U.C.C. § 4A-212 Liability and Duty of Receiving Bank Regarding Unaccepted Payment Order
§ 4A-212:1 Limitation of liability of receiving bank regarding unaccepted payment order
§ 4A-212:2 —Against which creditor process has been issued
§ 4A-212:3 Limitation of liability of receiving bank regarding accepted payment order
§ 4A-212:4 Receiving bank is not agent of sender or beneficiary of payment order
§ 4A-212:5 Formalities for agreements under U.C.C. § 4A-212

PART 3 EXECUTION OF SENDER’S PAYMENT ORDER BY RECEIVING BANK
U.C.C. § 4A-301 Execution and Execution Date
§ 4A-301:1 Execution
§ 4A-301:2 Execution date

U.C.C. § 4A-302 Obligations of Receiving Bank in Execution of Payment Order
§ 4A-302:1 Receiving bank’s obligations arising out of acceptance
§ 4A-302:2 Sender’s designation of funds transfer system
§ 4A-302:3 Sender’s designation of intermediary bank
§ 4A-302:4 Expeditious execution requirement or instruction
§ 4A-302:5 Receiving bank deduction for charges and expenses from payment order
§ 4A-302:6 Beneficiary bank deduction for charges and expenses from payment order

U.C.C. § 4A-303 Erroneous Execution of Payment Order
§ 4A-303:1 Erroneous execution
§ 4A-303:2 Payment order issued in amount greater than sender’s instruction
Table of Contents

§ 4A-303:3 Law of mistake and restitution
§ 4A-303:4 Duplicate payment orders
§ 4A-303:5 Payment order issued in amount less than sender's instruction
§ 4A-303:6 Payment order issued to beneficiary different from beneficiary of sender's order
§ 4A-303:7 Effect of U.C.C. § 4A-303 remedies on sender's rights to delay and other damages

U.C.C. § 4A-304 Duty of Sender to Report Erroneously Executed Payment Order
§ 4A-304:1 Scope
§ 4A-304:2 Notice of erroneous execution
§ 4A-304:3 Amount refundable under U.C.C. § 4A-402(d)
§ 4A-304:4 Bank's rights if sender fails to act
§ 4A-304:5 Duty to exercise ordinary care

U.C.C. § 4A-305 Liability for Late or Improper Execution or Failure to Execute Payment Order
§ 4A-305:1 Receiving bank liability for late or improper execution or failure to execute payment order
§ 4A-305:2 —Noncompletion of funds transfer
§ 4A-305:3 —Failure to use intermediary bank designated by originator
§ 4A-305:4 —Issuance of payment order otherwise failing to comply with sender's instructions
§ 4A-305:5 —Other damages including consequential damages for late or improper execution of payment order
§ 4A-305:6 —Failure to execute payment order when required to do so by agreement
§ 4A-305:7 —Attorneys' fees
§ 4A-305:8 Variation by agreement of receiving bank's liability under U.C.C. § 4A-305(a) or 4A-305(b)

PART 4 PAYMENT

U.C.C. § 4A-401 Payment Date
§ 4A-401:1 Payment date defined
§ 4A-401:2 Sender specified payment date
§ 4A-401:3 Relative payment date
§ 4A-401:4 Conditional payment date
§ 4A-401:5 Relation of payment date and execution date

U.C.C. § 4A-402 Obligation of Sender to Pay Receiving Bank
§ 4A-402:1 Obligation of sender to pay beneficiary's bank
§ 4A-402:2 Obligation of sender to pay receiving bank other than beneficiary's bank
§ 4A-402:3 —Noncompleted funds transfer

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 4A-402:4 —Noncompleted funds transfer involving sender designated intermediary bank
§ 4A-402:5 Receiving bank's obligation to refund to sender amount of payment order for noncompleted funds transfer
§ 4A-402:6 Waiver of sender's right of excused performance under U.C.C. § 4A-402(c) and right to receive refund under U.C.C. § 4A-402(d)

U.C.C. § 4A-403 Payment by Sender to Receiving Bank
§ 4A-403:1 Payment by receipt of final settlement through Federal Reserve Bank or funds-transfer system
§ 4A-403:2 Payment by credit to account of receiving bank
§ 4A-403:3 Payment by debit of sender's account with receiving bank
§ 4A-403:4 Payment when sender and receiving bank are members of netting funds-transfer system
§ 4A-403:5 Payment by setoff between two banks by agreement
§ 4A-403:6 Determination of time of payment for cases not covered by U.C.C. § 4A-403(a)

U.C.C. § 4A-404 Obligation of Beneficiary's Bank to Pay and Give Notice to Beneficiary
§ 4A-404:1 Obligation of beneficiary's bank to pay beneficiary
§ 4A-404:2 —Consequential damages for nonpayment
§ 4A-404:3 Beneficiary's bank defense to demand for consequential damages
§ 4A-404:4 Notice by beneficiary's bank to beneficiary of acceptance of payment order
§ 4A-404:5 Variation of rights and obligations under U.C.C. § 4A-404 by agreement or funds-transfer system rule

U.C.C. § 4A-405 Payment by Beneficiary's Bank to Beneficiary
§ 4A-405:1 Payment to beneficiary by credit to account of beneficiary
§ 4A-405:2 Payment to beneficiary other than by credit to account of beneficiary
§ 4A-405:3 General prohibition of conditional payment to beneficiary
§ 4A-405:4 Conditional payment to beneficiary under funds-transfer system rule
§ 4A-405:5 Originator's cause of action against beneficiary's bank for failure to receive notice of provisional payment under funds-transfer system rule
§ 4A-405:6 Provisional payment in funds-transfer system which employs multilateral netting

civ
TABLE OF CONTENTS

U.C.C. § 4A-406 Payment by Originator to Beneficiary; Discharge of Underlying Obligation
§ 4A-406:1 General rule of time and extent of payment by originator to beneficiary of payment order
§ 4A-406:2 When payment results in discharge of obligation of originator to beneficiary although payment not made in accordance with contract
§ 4A-406:3 Discharge in full for payment order from which sending bank charges are deducted
§ 4A-406:4 Variation of rights of originator or beneficiary under U.C.C. § 4A-406

PART 5 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
U.C.C. § 4A-501 Variation by Agreement and Effect of Funds-Transfer System Rule
§ 4A-501:1 Permissive variation of rights and obligations of party to funds transfer
§ 4A-501:2 Funds-transfer system rules
§ 4A-501:3 Priority between funds-transfer system rules and U.C.C. Article 4A
§ 4A-501:4 Effect of funds-transfer system rules on third persons
§ 4A-501:5 Federal preemption
§ 4A-501:6 Example of bank funds-transfer agreement
§ 4A-501:7 Formalities of U.C.C. § 4A-501(a) permissive variation agreement
U.C.C. § 4A-502 Creditor Process Served on Receiving Bank; Setoff by Beneficiary’s Bank
§ 4A-502:1 Creditor process definition
§ 4A-502:2 Creditor process levied with respect to authorized account
§ 4A-502:3 Beneficiary’s bank compliance with creditor process
§ 4A-502:4 Effectiveness of service of creditor process
§ 4A-502:5 Creditor process and beneficiary who has no account in beneficiary’s bank
U.C.C. § 4A-503 Injunction or Restraining Order with Respect to Funds Transfer
§ 4A-503:1 Injunctions or restraining orders related to payment orders
§ 4A-503:2 Order to restrain originator
§ 4A-503:3 Order to restrain originator’s bank
§ 4A-503:4 Order to restrain beneficiary
§ 4A-503:5 Order to restrain beneficiary’s bank

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 4A-503:6 Order to restrain other persons

U.C.C. § 4A-504 Order in Which Items and Payment Orders May be Charged to Account; Order of Withdrawals from Account

§ 4A-504:1 Parity among obligations of sender’s account
§ 4A-504:2 Order of withdrawals or applications of credits

U.C.C. § 4A-505 Preclusion of Objection to Debit of Customer’s Account

§ 4A-505:1 Statute of repose for customer objections to account debits
§ 4A-505:2 Tolling of running of period of repose
§ 4A-505:3 Statutes of repose for Non U.C.C. § 4A-505 objections
§ 4A-505:4 Variation of U.C.C. § 4A-505 by agreement

U.C.C. § 4A-506 Rate of Interest

§ 4A-506:1 Instances in which receiving bank owes refund
§ 4A-506:2 Interest rate on refund determined by agreement
§ 4A-506:3 Interest rate on refund determined by funds-transfer system rule
§ 4A-506:4 Default interest rate on refund
§ 4A-506:5 Federal Funds rate
§ 4A-506:6 Effect of fault of bank other than refunding bank on interest rate on refund
§ 4A-506:7 Burden of pleading and proving fault of receiving bank
§ 4A-506:8 Federal reserve bank interest obligation payment options

U.C.C. § 4A-507 Choice of Law

§ 4A-507:1 Residual rules of choice of law
§ 4A-507:2 Renvoi and determination of governing law
§ 4A-507:3 Choice of law by agreement of parties to funds transfer
§ 4A-507:4 Choice of law by funds-transfer system rule determination; Depecage
§ 4A-507:5 Conflicts between choice of law determinations by agreement between parties and funds-transfer system rule
§ 4A-507:6 Conflicts between choice of law determinations by funds-transfer system rule when more than one funds-transfer system is used in completion of funds transfer
§ 4A-507:7 Federal preemption and choice of law

cvi
# Table of Contents

## Volume 6B

### ARTICLE 5 LETTERS OF CREDIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-101</td>
<td>Short Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-101:1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-101:2</td>
<td>Advantages of using letters of credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102</td>
<td>Scope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:1</td>
<td>Scope of Article 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:2</td>
<td>Letters of credit issued by banks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:3</td>
<td>Letters of credit issued by nonbanks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:4</td>
<td>Conspicuous notation that letter of credit is intended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:5</td>
<td>Engagements not subject to Article 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:6</td>
<td>Standby or guaranty letters of credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:7</td>
<td>Uniform customs and practice for documentary credits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:8</td>
<td>The New York modification of § 5-102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:9</td>
<td>Applicability of other rules of law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:10</td>
<td>Choice of law problems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:1</td>
<td>Letter of credit defined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:2</td>
<td>Revocability of credits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:3</td>
<td>Documentary draft or other documentary demand for payment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:4</td>
<td>Issuer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:5</td>
<td>Beneficiary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:6</td>
<td>Advising bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:7</td>
<td>Confirming bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:8</td>
<td>Customer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-104</td>
<td>Formal Requirements; Signing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-104:1</td>
<td>Formal requirements for letters of credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-104:2</td>
<td>General rules for construction of letters of credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-104:3</td>
<td>Ambiguous language construed against drafter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-104:4</td>
<td>Ambiguous language construed to sustain viability of letter of credit where possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-105</td>
<td>Consideration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-105:1</td>
<td>Necessity for consideration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-106</td>
<td>Time and Effect of Establishment of Credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-106:1</td>
<td>Time of establishment of credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-106:2</td>
<td>Modification of irrevocable letter of credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-106:3</td>
<td>Modification of revocable letter of credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-106:4</td>
<td>Modification by agreement of the parties</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018  cvii
§ 5-106:5 Modification by waiver or estoppel
§ 5-106:6 Effect of release agreement on the underlying transaction
§ 5-106:7 Modification and revocation under the UCP
§ 5-106:8 Obligation of issuer to modify terms of credit when requested by customer and beneficiary

§ 5-107 Advice of Credit; Confirmation; Error in Statement of Terms
§ 5-107:1 Obligation of confirming bank
§ 5-107:2 Obligation of advising bank
§ 5-107:3 Errors in advice of credit
§ 5-108 “Notation Credit”; Exhaustion of Credit
§ 5-108:1 Notation credits
§ 5-108:2 Exhaustion of credit under a nonnotation credit

§ 5-109 Issuer's Obligation to Its Customer
§ 5-109:1 Obligation to issue a letter of credit
§ 5-109:2 General obligations of issuer to its customer
§ 5-109:3 Need for specificity in describing documents required
§ 5-109:4 Issuer's obligation to examine documents for compliance to terms of credit
§ 5-109:5 Remedies for wrongful honor
§ 5-109:6 Issuer's obligation on underlying contract
§ 5-109:7 Other limitations on the obligation and liability of the issuer

§ 5-110 Availability of Credit in Portions; Presenter's Reservation of Lien or Claim
§ 5-110:1 Credit made available in portions
§ 5-110:2 Reservation of lien or claim against documents prohibited

§ 5-111 Warranties on Transfer and Presentment
§ 5-111:1 Warranties of beneficiary
§ 5-111:2 Warranties of intermediary parties
§ 5-112 Time Allowed for Honor or Rejection; Withholding Honor or Rejection by Consent; “Presenter”
§ 5-112:1 Time allowed issuer for honor of documentary demands for payment
§ 5-112:2 Return of documents to presenter after dishonor

§ 5-113 Indemnities
§ 5-113:1 In general
§ 5-113:2 Scope of indemnity agreement
§ 5-113:3 Expiration time of indemnity agreement
§ 5-114 Issuer's Duty and Privilege to Honor; Right to Reimbursement
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 5-114:1 General obligation of issuer to honor payment demands
§ 5-114:2 Issuer’s obligation independent of underlying contract
§ 5-114:3 Standard for determining whether a demand for payment complies with the terms of the credit
§ 5-114:4 Waivers and estoppels of defects in demands for payment
§ 5-114:5 Forged or fraudulent documents, or fraud in the transaction—General principles
§ 5-114:6 —Injunctions against honor
§ 5-114:7 — —Irreparable injury requirement
§ 5-114:8 — —Probability of success on the merits; Establishing forgery
§ 5-114:9 — —Probability of success on the merits; Establishing fraud
§ 5-114:10 — —Additional factors to be considered
§ 5-114:11 —Notice injunctions
§ 5-114:12 —Summary of requirements for injunctive relief
§ 5-114:13 Right to reimbursement
§ 5-114:14 Conditional payment
§ 5-114:15 Enjoining letters of credit where the customer becomes bankrupt
§ 5-115 Remedy for Improper Dishonor or Anticipatory Repudiation
§ 5-115:1 In general
§ 5-116 Transfer and Assignment
§ 5-116:1 In general
§ 5-116:2 Assignment of the right to proceeds under the credit
§ 5-116:3 Back-to-back letters of credit
§ 5-116:4 Straight and negotiation credits
§ 5-117 Insolvency of Bank Holding Funds for Documentary Credit
§ 5-117:1 In general

ARTICLE 5 [REV] LETTERS OF CREDIT

U.C.C. § 5-101 [Rev] Short Title
§ 5-101:1 [Rev] Letters of credit generally
§ 5-101:3 [Rev] Relationship of Rev. U.C.C. Article 5 to Prior U.C.C. Article 5 and decisions under it
§ 5-101:4 [Rev] Non-conforming amendments

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 5-101:5 [Rev] Use of letters of credit
§ 5-101:6 [Rev] Uses of letters of credit—Non-sales transactions
§ 5-101:7 [Rev] Documentary assurance
§ 5-101:8 [Rev] Names of the letter of credit undertakings
§ 5-101:9 [Rev] Letter of credit distinguished from other undertakings
§ 5-101:10 [Rev] Relationship to common law
§ 5-101:11 [Rev] Relationship to other statutes
§ 5-101:12 [Rev] Relationship to other statutes—Other articles of the Uniform Commercial Code
§ 5-101:13 [Rev] Relationship to other statutes—Other statutes and case law
§ 5-101:15 [Rev] The myth that “no letter of credit law is necessary”
§ 5-101:17 [Rev] Relationship to bank regulations
§ 5-101:18 [Rev] Bank insolvency
§ 5-101:19 [Rev] International letter of credit law and its international codification
§ 5-101:20 [Rev] Ultra vires
§ 5-101:21 [Rev] Set-off
§ 5-101:23 [Rev] Variation
§ 5-101:24 [Rev] General bibliography
U.C.C. § 5-102 [Rev] Definitions
§ 5-102:1 [Rev] Definitions generally
§ 5-102:2 [Rev] Variation and mandatory definitions
§ 5-102:3 [Rev] Relationship to substantive law
§ 5-102:4 [Rev] “Adviser” subsection (a)(1)
§ 5-102:5 [Rev] Context in letters of credit practice
§ 5-102:6 [Rev] Comparison with definitions in letters of credit rules; banks
§ 5-102:7 [Rev] “Notifies or requests”
§ 5-102:8 [Rev] Notification
§ 5-102:9 [Rev] Subject of advices
§ 5-102:10 [Rev] Second advising bank
§ 5-102:11 [Rev] Advising banks and other banks involved in the letter of credit process; not a nominated person
| § 5-102:12 [Rev] | Branches |
| § 5-102:13 [Rev] | Routing of communications |
| § 5-102:14 [Rev] | The obligation of an adviser |
| § 5-102:15 [Rev] | Agency |
| § 5-102:16 [Rev] | Variation of the definition of “adviser” |
| § 5-102:17 [Rev] | “Applicant” subsection (a)(2) |
| § 5-102:18 [Rev] | Context in letters of credit practice |
| § 5-102:19 [Rev] | Related terms: “customer,” “account party,” “application,” “reimbursement agreement,” “principal” |
| § 5-102:20 [Rev] | Comparison with definitions in letter of credit rules |
| § 5-102:21 [Rev] | Comparison with definitions in the UN LC convention |
| § 5-102:22 [Rev] | At whose request |
| § 5-102:23 [Rev] | For whose account |
| § 5-102:24 [Rev] | multiple applicants |
| § 5-102:25 [Rev] | Sureties |
| § 5-102:26 [Rev] | Legal effect of being an applicant |
| § 5-102:27 [Rev] | Where required document under letter of credit is to contain name of applicant |
| § 5-102:28 [Rev] | Applications or reimbursement agreements |
| § 5-102:29 [Rev] | Obligations of the applicant |
| § 5-102:30 [Rev] | Agency |
| § 5-102:31 [Rev] | Variation of the definition of “applicant” |
| § 5-102:32 [Rev] | Beneficiary subsection (a)(3) |
| § 5-102:33 [Rev] | Context in letter of credit practice |
| § 5-102:34 [Rev] | Comparison with definitions in letter of credit rules |
| § 5-102:35 [Rev] | Comparison with UN LC convention |
| § 5-102:36 [Rev] | Entitled to honor |
| § 5-102:37 [Rev] | Multiple beneficiaries |
| § 5-102:38 [Rev] | Obligations of the beneficiary |
| § 5-102:39 [Rev] | Accepting the credit |
| § 5-102:40 [Rev] | Transferee beneficiary |
| § 5-102:41 [Rev] | Successor beneficiary (Transfer by Operation of Law) |
| § 5-102:42 [Rev] | Banks that do not act pursuant to their nomination |
| § 5-102:43 [Rev] | Assignee of proceeds |
| § 5-102:44 [Rev] | Confirmer |
| § 5-102:45 [Rev] | Use of the exact beneficiary name as it appears in the letter of credit |

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 5-102:46 [Rev] Variation of the definition of “beneficiary”
§ 5-102:47 [Rev] “Confirmer” subsection (a)(4)
§ 5-102:48 [Rev] Context in letter of credit practice
§ 5-102:49 [Rev] Comparison with definitions in letter of credit rules
§ 5-102:50 [Rev] Comparison with definitions in the UN LC convention
§ 5-102:51 [Rev] Confirming banks and non-bank confirmers and issuers
§ 5-102:52 [Rev] Confirmers distinguished from issuers
§ 5-102:53 [Rev] Confirmers distinguished from other nominated banks
§ 5-102:54 [Rev] Confirmers distinguished from advisers
§ 5-102:55 [Rev] Confirmation distinguished from counter guarantee or counter standby
§ 5-102:56 [Rev] Confirmers distinguished from collecting banks
§ 5-102:57 [Rev] Branches
§ 5-102:58 [Rev] Undertaking to honor another’s letter of credit (“adds”); confirmation
§ 5-102:59 [Rev] The Confirmer’s undertaking
§ 5-102:60 [Rev] At the request or with the consent
§ 5-102:62 [Rev] A nominated confirmer that declines to confirm
§ 5-102:64 [Rev] Provisions applicable to the confirmer in the context of “issuer” and “letter of credit”
§ 5-102:65 [Rev] Consumer as a confirmer
§ 5-102:66 [Rev] Obligations of a confirmer
§ 5-102:67 [Rev] Undertaking to confirm by nominated bank not requested to confirm (so-called “silent confirmations”)
§ 5-102:68 [Rev] Variations of the definition of “Confirmer”
§ 5-102:69 [Rev] Select bibliography
§ 5-102:70 [Rev] “Dishonor” subsection (a)(5)
§ 5-102:71 [Rev] Context in letters of credit practice
§ 5-102:72 [Rev] Comparison with definitions in letter of credit rules
§ 5-102:73 [Rev] Failure to honor within the time to do so
§ 5-102:74 [Rev] Failure to take a required interim action
§ 5-102:75 [Rev] Wrongful dishonor

UNIFORM COMMERCIAL CODE SERIES cxii
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5-102:76 [Rev]</td>
<td>Waiver and other imprecise aspects of dishonor and honor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:77 [Rev]</td>
<td>Variations of the definition of “dishonor”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:79 [Rev]</td>
<td>Context in LC practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:80 [Rev]</td>
<td>Comparison with definitions in letter of credit rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:81 [Rev]</td>
<td>Comparison with UN LC Convention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:82 [Rev]</td>
<td>Draft or demand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:84 [Rev]</td>
<td>Other types of documents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:85 [Rev]</td>
<td>Other record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:86 [Rev]</td>
<td>Representation of fact, law, right or opinion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:87 [Rev]</td>
<td>Presented</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:88 [Rev]</td>
<td>Capable of being examined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:89 [Rev]</td>
<td>Paper documents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:90 [Rev]</td>
<td>Electronic documents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:91 [Rev]</td>
<td>“Facsimile” or “telefax”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:92 [Rev]</td>
<td>Variation of the definition of “document”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:93 [Rev]</td>
<td>Select bibliography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:94 [Rev]</td>
<td>“Good faith” subsection (a)(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:95 [Rev]</td>
<td>Scope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:96 [Rev]</td>
<td>Honesty in fact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:97 [Rev]</td>
<td>Comparison with the definition of “good faith” in Rev. U.C.C. Article 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:98 [Rev]</td>
<td>Variation of the definition of “good faith”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:99 [Rev]</td>
<td>Select bibliography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:100 [Rev]</td>
<td>“Honor” subsection (a)(8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:101 [Rev]</td>
<td>Performance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:103 [Rev]</td>
<td>Negotiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:104 [Rev]</td>
<td>Deliver an item of value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:106 [Rev]</td>
<td>Honor, reimbursement, and cover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:107 [Rev]</td>
<td>Variation of the definition of “Honor”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:108 [Rev]</td>
<td>Select bibliography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:110 [Rev]</td>
<td>Bank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:111 [Rev]</td>
<td>Other person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:112 [Rev]</td>
<td>Other names; guarantor; counter guarantor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:113 [Rev]</td>
<td>Consumers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5-102:114 [Rev]</td>
<td>Confirmers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 5-102:115 [Rev] Nominated persons irrevocably undertaking to purchase
§ 5-102:116 [Rev] Dual roles
§ 5-102:117 [Rev] Branches
§ 5-102:118 [Rev] Obligation of an issuer
§ 5-102:119 [Rev] Variation of the definition of “issuer”: non-variable per § 5-103(c)
§ 5-102:120 [Rev] Select bibliography
§ 5-102:122 [Rev] Classification; typology; independent undertakings
§ 5-102:123 [Rev] Classification; typology; independent undertakings—commercial letters of credit or so-called “documentary credits”
§ 5-102:124 [Rev] Classification; typology; independent undertakings—Clean credits
§ 5-102:125 [Rev] Classification; typology; independent undertakings—Standby letters of credit
§ 5-102:126 [Rev] Classification; typology; independent undertakings—Independent guarantees
§ 5-102:127 [Rev] Classification; typology; independent undertakings—Pre-advises
§ 5-102:128 [Rev] Classification; typology; independent undertakings—Reimbursement undertakings
§ 5-102:129 [Rev] Classification; typology; independent undertakings—Irrevocable undertakings to purchase documents by a nominated bank
§ 5-102:130 [Rev] Name of the undertaking however named or described
§ 5-102:131 [Rev] Factors in determining whether an undertaking is a “letter of credit”
§ 5-102:132 [Rev] Subject to Rules of Practice
§ 5-102:133 [Rev] Definite undertaking
§ 5-102:134 [Rev] To honor a documentary presentation
§ 5-102:135 [Rev] Guarantee; dependent undertakings
§ 5-102:136 [Rev] Non-documentary conditions
§ 5-102:137 [Rev] Counter undertakings: counter standbys and counter guarantees
§ 5-102:138 [Rev] Formal requirements
§ 5-102:139 [Rev] Dual status
§ 5-102:140 [Rev] At the applicant’s request or account
§ 5-102:141 [Rev] Financial institution: for its own account

UNIFORM COMMERCIAL CODE SERIES
cxiv
# Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:142 [Rev]</td>
<td>Payment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:143 [Rev]</td>
<td>Delivery of an item of value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:144 [Rev]</td>
<td>Transferred credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:147 [Rev]</td>
<td>Revocable undertaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:148 [Rev]</td>
<td>Non-issued letters of credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:149 [Rev]</td>
<td>Consumer undertakings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:150 [Rev]</td>
<td>Structured Letters of Credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:151 [Rev]</td>
<td>Variation of the definition of “letter of credit”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:152 [Rev]</td>
<td>Select bibliography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:154 [Rev]</td>
<td>Context in letters of credit practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:155 [Rev]</td>
<td>Comparison with definitions in letter of credit rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:156 [Rev]</td>
<td>Bank or person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:157 [Rev]</td>
<td>Branches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:158 [Rev]</td>
<td>Designates or authorizes under a LC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:159 [Rev]</td>
<td>Types of nomination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:160 [Rev]</td>
<td>Types of nomination—To pay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:161 [Rev]</td>
<td>Types of nomination—To accept</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:162 [Rev]</td>
<td>Types of nomination—To negotiate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:163 [Rev]</td>
<td>Types of nomination—Otherwise give value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:164 [Rev]</td>
<td>Confirmer as a nominated person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:165 [Rev]</td>
<td>Issuer and confirmer’s obligation to reimburse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:166 [Rev]</td>
<td>Independence of nominated person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:167 [Rev]</td>
<td>Obligations of nominated person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:169 [Rev]</td>
<td>Amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:170 [Rev]</td>
<td>Variation of the definition of “nominated person”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:171 [Rev]</td>
<td>Select bibliography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:173 [Rev]</td>
<td>Context in letter of credit practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:174 [Rev]</td>
<td>Comparison with definitions in letter of credit rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:175 [Rev]</td>
<td>Delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:176 [Rev]</td>
<td>Place of presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:177 [Rev]</td>
<td>Electronic presentation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 cxv
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:178 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:179 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:180 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:181 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:182 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:183 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:184 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:185 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:186 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:187 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:188 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:189 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:190 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:191 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:193 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:194 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:195 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:196 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:197 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:198 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:200 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:201 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:202 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:203 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:204 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:205 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:206 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:207 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:208 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:209 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:210 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:211 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:212 [Rev]</td>
<td>“Value” and the UCP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:213 [Rev]</td>
<td>Promise to give value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:214 [Rev]</td>
<td>Varying the definition of “value”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-102:215 [Rev]</td>
<td>Select bibliography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 5-103 [Rev]</td>
<td>Scope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Generally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Nature of letters of credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Rights and obligations arising out of transactions involving letters of credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Undertakings not subject to Article 5 [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:5 [Rev]</td>
<td>Contract to issue or provide letter of credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:6 [Rev]</td>
<td>Evolution of letter of credit law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:7 [Rev]</td>
<td>Variations on obligations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:8 [Rev]</td>
<td>Variations on obligations—Limitations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:9 [Rev]</td>
<td>Variations on obligations—Mandatory provisions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:10 [Rev]</td>
<td>Variations on obligations—Qualifications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:11 [Rev]</td>
<td>Variation of effects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:12 [Rev]</td>
<td>Variation of effects—Rules of practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:13 [Rev]</td>
<td>General excuse of liability or limitation of remedies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:14 [Rev]</td>
<td>Independence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:15 [Rev]</td>
<td>Independence—Limitations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:16 [Rev]</td>
<td>Arbitration of issues related to underlying transaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:17 [Rev]</td>
<td>Commercial Fraud Involving Letters of Credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-103:18 [Rev]</td>
<td>Select bibliography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 5-104 [Rev]</td>
<td>Formal Requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-104:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Formalities and letters of credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-104:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Formal requirements of Rev. U.C.C. Article 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-104:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Letter of credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-104:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Undertakings that follow from a letter of credit: confirmation, advice, transfer, amendment, cancellation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-104:5 [Rev]</td>
<td>Consent to an amendment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-104:6 [Rev]</td>
<td>Waiver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-104:7 [Rev]</td>
<td>Record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-104:8 [Rev]</td>
<td>Authentication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-104:9 [Rev]</td>
<td>Authentication—Signature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-104:10 [Rev]</td>
<td>Authentication—Agreement of the parties</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 5-104:12 [Rev] Swift
§ 5-104:13 [Rev] eLCs (eUCP, ISP98)
§ 5-104:14 [Rev] Operative instrument
§ 5-104:15 [Rev] Presentation of the operative credit
§ 5-104:16 [Rev] UN Letter of Credit Convention
§ 5-104:17 [Rev] Parol Evidence and the relationship of the letter of credit to the underlying transaction
§ 5-104:18 [Rev] Ultra vires
§ 5-104:19 [Rev] Variation of Rev. U.C.C. § 5-104
§ 5-104:20 [Rev] Select bibliography
U.C.C. § 5-105 [Rev] Consideration
§ 5-105:1 [Rev] Consideration and letter of credit law & practice
§ 5-105:2 [Rev] Consideration and letter of credit promises
§ 5-105:3 [Rev] Issuance, amendment, cancellation, and transfer in issuance, advice, and confirmation
§ 5-105:4 [Rev] Consideration and other letter of credit obligations
§ 5-105:5 [Rev] Reimbursement and letter of credit law and practice
§ 5-105:6 [Rev] Recitals of consideration
§ 5-105:7 [Rev] Variation
§ 5-105:8 [Rev] Select bibliography
U.C.C. § 5-106 [Rev] Issuance, Amendment, Cancellation, and Duration
§ 5-106:1 [Rev] Issuance generally
§ 5-106:2 [Rev] How a credit is issued: “sends or otherwise transmits”
§ 5-106:3 [Rev] Conditional issuance
§ 5-106:4 [Rev] Irrevocable undertakings
§ 5-106:5 [Rev] Revocable undertakings
§ 5-106:6 [Rev] Amendment
§ 5-106:7 [Rev] Who is affected by an amendment?
§ 5-106:8 [Rev] Who is affected by an amendment?—Issuer
§ 5-106:9 [Rev] Who is affected by an amendment?—Issuer—Obligation to issue amendment
§ 5-106:10 [Rev] Who is affected by an amendment?—Confirmer
§ 5-106:11 [Rev] Who is affected by an amendment?—Applicant
§ 5-106:12 [Rev] Who is affected by an amendment?—Beneficiary
Table of Contents

§ 5-106:13 [Rev] Who is affected by an amendment?—
   Transferee beneficiary
§ 5-106:14 [Rev] Multiple versions of the credit
§ 5-106:15 [Rev] Termination of the power to consent
§ 5-106:16 [Rev] Cancellation
§ 5-106:17 [Rev] Consent
§ 5-106:18 [Rev] Automatic amendment or provisions that
   are effective without amendment
§ 5-106:19 [Rev] Expiration dates and perpetual credits
   generally
§ 5-106:20 [Rev] Expiry date
§ 5-106:21 [Rev] Automatic extension or evergreen clauses
   and similar devices
§ 5-106:22 [Rev] Notice of non-extension
§ 5-106:23 [Rev] Absence of an expiration date
§ 5-106:24 [Rev] Perpetual letters of credit
§ 5-106:25 [Rev] Retention of the original undertaking or
   instrument
§ 5-106:26 [Rev] Waiver
§ 5-106:27 [Rev] Variation
§ 5-106:28 [Rev] Select bibliography
U.C.C. § 5-107 [Rev] Confirmer, Nominated Person, and Adviser
§ 5-107:1 [Rev] Nominated persons and advising banks
   generally
§ 5-107:2 [Rev] Branches
§ 5-107:3 [Rev] Agency
§ 5-107:4 [Rev] Confirmer: obligation and consequences
§ 5-107:5 [Rev] Confirmer: obligation and consequences—
   Rights and obligations of an issuer
§ 5-107:6 [Rev] Confirmer: obligation and consequences—
   Obligation to the beneficiary
§ 5-107:7 [Rev] Confirmer: obligation and consequences—
   Obligation to other nominated persons
§ 5-107:8 [Rev] Confirmer: obligation and consequences—
   Relation with the issuer
§ 5-107:9 [Rev] Confirmer: obligation and consequences—
   Independence of confirmer’s obligation
§ 5-107:10 [Rev] Confirmers: limitations on confirmation
§ 5-107:11 [Rev] Confirmers: to whom must presentation be
   made
§ 5-107:12 [Rev] Confirmers and amendments
§ 5-107:13 [Rev] Lack of privity with the applicant
§ 5-107:14 [Rev] The obligation of an adviser

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 cxix
§ 5-107:15 [Rev] Forged Letters of Credit
§ 5-107:16 [Rev] Consequence of a misadvice
§ 5-107:17 [Rev] Advice of a transfer
§ 5-107:18 [Rev] Variation
§ 5-107:19 [Rev] Select bibliography

U.C.C. § 5-108 [Rev] Issuer’s Rights and Obligations
§ 5-108:1 [Rev] Issuer’s rights and obligations generally
§ 5-108:2 [Rev] Obligation to honor a complying presentation and dishonor a non-complying presentation
§ 5-108:3 [Rev] Strict compliance
§ 5-108:4 [Rev] Interpretation
§ 5-108:5 [Rev] Applicant Controlled Conditions
§ 5-108:6 [Rev] Presentation of original letter of credit
§ 5-108:7 [Rev] Role of the standard practice of financial institutions in determining compliance
§ 5-108:8 [Rev] Time for examination of documents
§ 5-108:9 [Rev] Waiver of discrepancies
§ 5-108:10 [Rev] Refusal & notice: a default rule
§ 5-108:11 [Rev] Preclusion rule
§ 5-108:12 [Rev] Preclusion rule—Exclusions
§ 5-108:13 [Rev] Preclusion rule—Exclusions—Expiration
§ 5-108:14 [Rev] Preclusion rule—Exclusions—Fraud
§ 5-108:15 [Rev] Disclaimer of any obligation for underlying transactions, other’s acts and omissions, and trade usage
§ 5-108:16 [Rev] To Whom Issuer’s Obligation is Owed
§ 5-108:17 [Rev] Non-documentary conditions
§ 5-108:18 [Rev] Disposition of presented documents
§ 5-108:19 [Rev] Reimbursement and rights on honor
§ 5-108:20 [Rev] Finality of honor by issuer, confirmer, or paying bank and warranty and subrogation
§ 5-108:21 [Rev] Letter of credit proceeds
§ 5-108:23 [Rev] Relationship between nominated banks and the issuer or applicant; not agents; no fiduciary duty
§ 5-108:24 [Rev] Branches
§ 5-108:25 [Rev] Variation of effect of provisions
§ 5-108:26 [Rev] Select bibliography

U.C.C. § 5-109 [Rev] Fraud and Forgery
§ 5-109:1 [Rev] The fraud exception to the independence principle generally
Table of Contents

§ 5-109:2 [Rev] Obligation of issuer to honor a complying presentation
§ 5-109:3 [Rev] Basis: forged or materially fraudulent documents
§ 5-109:4 [Rev] Basis: facilitate a material fraud by the beneficiary on the issuer or applicant
§ 5-109:5 [Rev] Letter of credit fraud and the materiality standard
§ 5-109:6 [Rev] Notice of drawing
§ 5-109:7 [Rev] Abuse or abus dé droit
§ 5-109:8 [Rev] Protected persons: confirmers and other nominated banks; collecting banks
§ 5-109:9 [Rev] Protected persons: holder of accepted drafts and persons to whom deferred payment undertakings run
§ 5-109:10 [Rev] Transferee beneficiaries, assignees of proceeds, and successor beneficiaries
§ 5-109:11 [Rev] Duty to investigate or refuse a presentation
§ 5-109:12 [Rev] Honor or Dishonor in Good Faith
§ 5-109:13 [Rev] Injunctions and other similar relief
§ 5-109:14 [Rev] Injunctions and other similar relief—Standing
§ 5-109:15 [Rev] Injunctions and other similar relief—Likelihood of success and protected persons
§ 5-109:16 [Rev] Injunctions and other similar relief—Applicable to arbitration
§ 5-109:17 [Rev] Injunctions and other similar relief—Scope
§ 5-109:18 [Rev] Injunctions and other similar relief—Deferece to the extraordinary actions of other courts
§ 5-109:19 [Rev] Additional requirements for extraordinary relief
§ 5-109:20 [Rev] Additional requirements for extraordinary relief—other law applicable to accepted drafts or deferred payment undertakings
§ 5-109:21 [Rev] Additional requirements for extraordinary relief—adequate protection for the beneficiary, issuer, or nominated person
§ 5-109:22 [Rev] Additional requirements for extraordinary relief—meets other legal requirements for extraordinary relief
§ 5-109:23 [Rev] Additional requirements for extraordinary relief—meets other legal requirements for extraordinary relief—Adequate remedy

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 5-109:24 [Rev] Additional requirements for extraordinary relief—meets other legal requirements for extraordinary relief—Irreparable harm

§ 5-109:25 [Rev] Additional requirements for extraordinary relief—meets other legal requirements for extraordinary relief—Balancing interests of beneficiary and applicant

§ 5-109:26 [Rev] Additional requirements for extraordinary relief—meets other legal requirements for extraordinary relief—Public interest considerations

§ 5-109:27 [Rev] Additional requirements for extraordinary relief—meets other legal requirements for extraordinary relief—Preserving the status quo

§ 5-109:28 [Rev] Additional requirements for extraordinary relief—meets other legal requirements for extraordinary relief—Other procedural or statutory requirements

§ 5-109:29 [Rev] When letter of credit fraud can justify refusal

§ 5-109:30 [Rev] Bankruptcy and injunctions

§ 5-109:31 [Rev] Illegality and government sanctions

§ 5-109:32 [Rev] Variation

§ 5-109:33 [Rev] Select bibliography

U.C.C. § 5-110 [Rev] Warranties

§ 5-110:1 [Rev] Letter of credit warranties

§ 5-110:2 [Rev] Post honor remedy

§ 5-110:3 [Rev] Beneficiary's warranty that there is no letter of credit fraud

§ 5-110:4 [Rev] No warranty of truthfulness or compliance

§ 5-110:5 [Rev] Beneficiary's warranty that there is no violation of agreement

§ 5-110:6 [Rev] No warranty of compliance

§ 5-110:7 [Rev] Application to transferee beneficiary; successor beneficiary

§ 5-110:8 [Rev] “In addition to” other warranties

§ 5-110:9 [Rev] Damages

§ 5-110:10 [Rev] Statute of limitations

§ 5-110:11 [Rev] Variation

§ 5-110:12 [Rev] Proceeds of letter of credit drawing

§ 5-110:13 [Rev] Select bibliography

U.C.C. § 5-111 [Rev] Remedies

§ 5-111:1 [Rev] Remedies generally
## Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-111:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Anticipatory repudiation and wrongful dishonor—U.C.C. § 5-111(a) [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-111:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Applicant action for wrongful dishonor or honor—U.C.C. § 5-111(b) [Rev]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-111:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Damages for misadvice against an advisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-111:5 [Rev]</td>
<td>Nominated person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-111:6 [Rev]</td>
<td>Other wrongful conduct by issuer or confirmor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-111:7 [Rev]</td>
<td>Summary disposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-111:8 [Rev]</td>
<td>Mitigation of damages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-111:9 [Rev]</td>
<td>Incidental damages, consequential damages, and punitive damages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-111:10 [Rev]</td>
<td>Prejudgment interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-111:11 [Rev]</td>
<td>Expenses of litigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-111:12 [Rev]</td>
<td>Attorney's fees for the prevailing party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-111:13 [Rev]</td>
<td>Liquidated damages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-111:14 [Rev]</td>
<td>Warranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-111:15 [Rev]</td>
<td>Mandatory actions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-111:16 [Rev]</td>
<td>Variation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-111:17 [Rev]</td>
<td>Select bibliography</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**U.C.C. § 5-112 [Rev]** Transfer of Letter of Credit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-112:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Transfer generally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-112:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Transfer of drawing rights distinguished from assignment of proceeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-112:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Transfer defined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-112:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Transfer in letter of credit practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-112:5 [Rev]</td>
<td>Letters of credit not transferable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-112:6 [Rev]</td>
<td>Obligation to transfer a transferable letter of credit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-112:7 [Rev]</td>
<td>Conditions to effecting a transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-112:8 [Rev]</td>
<td>Automatic transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-112:9 [Rev]</td>
<td>Consequences of a transfer: separate and independent undertaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-112:10 [Rev]</td>
<td>Advice of transfer &amp; mistransferred credits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-112:11 [Rev]</td>
<td>Transfer by operation of law: Rev. § 5-113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-112:12 [Rev]</td>
<td>Transfer and security interests</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-112:13 [Rev]</td>
<td>Variation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-112:14 [Rev]</td>
<td>Select bibliography</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**U.C.C. § 5-113 [Rev]** Transfer by Operation of Law

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-113:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Transfer of drawing rights generally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-113:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Compliance: the named beneficiary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-113:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>“Successor of a beneficiary”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 5-113:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Situations where there is legal succession;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
change of the name of the named beneficiary

§ 5-113:5 [Rev] Drawing by a successor in the name of the beneficiary [Rev. § 5-113(a)]

§ 5-113:6 [Rev] Drawing by a successor in the name of the successor [Rev. § 5-113(b)]

§ 5-113:7 [Rev] Compliance with requests for recognition under standard practice or other reasonable procedure

§ 5-113:8 [Rev] Effect of being legal successor

§ 5-113:9 [Rev] Genuineness of succession or signature

§ 5-113:10 [Rev] Right to reimbursement

§ 5-113:11 [Rev] Drawing by claimant who is not a successor

§ 5-113:12 [Rev] Right of bank to refuse to recognize succession

§ 5-113:13 [Rev] Transfer by operation of law and U.C.C. Article 9 security interests

§ 5-113:14 [Rev] Variation

§ 5-113:15 [Rev] Select bibliography

U.C.C. § 5-114 [Rev] Assignment of Proceeds

§ 5-114:1 [Rev] Transfer and assignment in letter of credit law & practice

§ 5-114:2 [Rev] Assignment of proceeds generally

§ 5-114:3 [Rev] Proceeds of a letter of credit

§ 5-114:4 [Rev] Ability of beneficiary to assign proceeds

§ 5-114:5 [Rev] Consent to assignment of proceeds

§ 5-114:6 [Rev] Obligation to consent


§ 5-114:8 [Rev] Independence and superiority of the rights of transferee beneficiary and nominated persons

§ 5-114:9 [Rev] Security interests in a letter-of-credit right under Revised U.C.C. Article 9

§ 5-114:10 [Rev] Variation

§ 5-114:11 [Rev] Select bibliography

U.C.C. § 5-115 [Rev] Statute of Limitations

§ 5-115:1 [Rev] Statute of limitations generally

§ 5-115:2 [Rev] Scope

§ 5-115:3 [Rev] Beginning point of limitations period

§ 5-115:4 [Rev] Expiration date

§ 5-115:5 [Rev] Accrual of a cause of action

§ 5-115:6 [Rev] Effective date

§ 5-115:7 [Rev] Variation
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 5-115:8 [Rev]  Select bibliography
U.C.C. § 5-116 [Rev]  Choice of Law and Forum
§ 5-116:1 [Rev]  Choice of law and forum generally
§ 5-116:2 [Rev]  Choosing a law
§ 5-116:3 [Rev]  Agreement
§ 5-116:4 [Rev]  Provision
§ 5-116:5 [Rev]  Lack of relation to the transaction
§ 5-116:6 [Rev]  Sovereign Immunity
§ 5-116:7 [Rev]  No choice of law clause: § 5-116(b)
§ 5-116:8 [Rev]  Branches
§ 5-116:9 [Rev]  Application of multiple laws arising out of the same credit transaction
§ 5-116:10 [Rev]  Rules of practice as a choice of law
§ 5-116:11 [Rev]  Conflicts with other U.C.C. Articles
§ 5-116:12 [Rev]  Choice of forum
§ 5-116:14 [Rev]  Jurisdiction
§ 5-116:15 [Rev]  Arbitration
§ 5-116:16 [Rev]  Select bibliography
U.C.C. § 5-117 [Rev]  Subrogation of Issuer, Applicant, and Nominated Person
§ 5-117:1 [Rev]  Limits of independence in letter of credit law
§ 5-117:2 [Rev]  Subrogation & letters of credit
§ 5-117:3 [Rev]  Prior U.C.C. Article 5 and subrogation
§ 5-117:4 [Rev]  Subrogation under Rev. U.C.C. § 5-117 generally
§ 5-117:5 [Rev]  Confers no right
§ 5-117:6 [Rev]  Post honor
§ 5-117:7 [Rev]  Secondary Obligor
§ 5-117:8 [Rev]  Issuer’s rights of subrogation to the rights of the beneficiary and applicant
§ 5-117:9 [Rev]  Confirmer’s right to subrogation
§ 5-117:10 [Rev]  Applicant’s right to subrogation
§ 5-117:11 [Rev]  Nominated person’s right to subrogation
§ 5-117:12 [Rev]  Relationship between Article 5 and Bankruptcy Code
§ 5-117:13 [Rev]  Variation
§ 5-117:14 [Rev]  Select bibliography
U.C.C. § 5-118 [Rev]  Security Interest of Issuer or Nominated Person
§ 5-118:1 [Rev]  Security interest in letters of credit under the UCC

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 5-118:2 [Rev] Security interests under U.C.C. § 5-118


§ 5-118:4 [Rev] Subject of U.C.C. § 5-118 [Rev] security interest; documents presented

§ 5-118:5 [Rev] Honors or gives value

§ 5-118:6 [Rev] Creation of a security interest

§ 5-118:7 [Rev] Perfection of a security interest

§ 5-118:8 [Rev] Perfection of a security interest—Intangible medium

§ 5-118:9 [Rev] Perfection of a security interest—Documents not addressed in 1999 U.C.C. Article 9 that are presented in tangible medium

§ 5-118:10 [Rev] Perfection of a security interest—Certificated security, chattel paper, a document of title, an instrument, or a letter of credit

§ 5-118:11 [Rev] Duration and termination of security interest

§ 5-118:12 [Rev] Documents forwarded for reimbursement

§ 5-118:13 [Rev] Variation

§ 5-118:14 [Rev] Select bibliography

Appendix A. International Standby Practices

Appendix B. ISP98 Form 1 Model Standby Incorporating Annexed Form of Payment Demand with Statement

Appendix C. ISP98 Form 2 Model Standby Providing for Extension and Incorporating Annexed Form of Payment Demand with Alternative Non-Extension Statement

Appendix D. ISP98 Form 3 Model Standby Providing for Reduction and Incorporating Annexed Form of Reduction Demand

Appendix E. ISP98 Form 4 Model Standby Providing for Transfer and Incorporating Annexed Form of Transfer Demand

Appendix F. ISP98 Form 5 Simplified Demand Only Standby

Appendix G. ISP98 Form 6 Model Counter Standby with Annexed Form of Local Bank Undertaking
### ARTICLE 6 BULK TRANSFERS

U.C.C. § 6-101 Short Title

§ 6-101:1 History of bulk transfer legislation

§ 6-101:2 Organization of original Article 6

§ 6-101:3 Rationale for repeal or revision of original Article 6; background

§ 6-101:4 American Bar Association committee review of Original Article 6

U.C.C. § 6-102 “Bulk Transfers”; Transfers of Equipment; Enterprises Subject to This Article; Bulk Transfers Subject to This Article

§ 6-102:1 Scope of Article 6—In general

§ 6-102:2 Scope of Article 6—Covers bulk transfers, not limited to bulk sales

§ 6-102:3 Subject-matter limitations—Materials, supplies, merchandise, or other inventory

§ 6-102:4 Subject-matter limitations—Equipment

§ 6-102:5 Enterprise limitations—Relationship to subject-matter limitations

§ 6-102:6 Enterprise limitations—Sale of merchandise from stock

§ 6-102:7 Quantitative limitations on transfers of inventory—Major part

§ 6-102:8 Quantitative limitations on transfers of inventory—In bulk

§ 6-102:9 Quantitative limitations on transfers of equipment

§ 6-102:10 Qualitative limitations on extraordinary sales

§ 6-102:11 Territorial limitations

U.C.C. § 6-103 Transfers Excepted From This Article

§ 6-103:1 Excepted transfers in general

§ 6-103:2 Exceptions where creditors adequately protected

§ 6-103:3 Bulk mortgages

§ 6-103:4 Assumption of debts and transfer to new enterprise organized to take over the transferor

U.C.C. § 6-104 Schedule of Property, List of Creditors

§ 6-104:1 General purpose of Section 6-104

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 6-104:2 List of creditors
§ 6-104:3 Responsibility for completeness and accuracy
§ 6-104:4 Schedule of property
§ 6-104:5 Effect of noncompliance—Remedies available to creditors
§ 6-104:6 Effect of noncompliance—Pro rata distribution contemplated
§ 6-104:7 Effect of partial noncompliance
§ 6-104:8 Alternatives to compliance
§ 6-104:9 Remedies of creditors where there has been compliance—In general
§ 6-104:10 Remedies of creditors where there has been compliance—Remedies of unsecured creditors
§ 6-104:11 Remedies of creditors where there has been compliance—Remedies of secured creditors

U.C.C. § 6-105 Notice to Creditors
§ 6-105:1 Notice—In general
§ 6-105:2 Notice—When deemed to have been properly given
§ 6-105:3 Notice—Determining the time period

U.C.C. § 6-106 Application of the Proceeds
§ 6-106:1 In general
§ 6-106:2 Personal liability of transferee
§ 6-106:3 Creditors protected—Unlisted creditors who file
§ 6-106:4 Creditors protected—Nonconsensual creditors
§ 6-106:5 Creditors protected—Secured creditors
§ 6-106:6 Applicability to auction sales

U.C.C. § 6-107 The Notice
§ 6-107:1 Short and long forms of notice
§ 6-107:2 Short form problems
§ 6-107:3 Long form problems
§ 6-107:4 Sending or delivering notice

U.C.C. § 6-108 Auction Sales; “Auctioneer”
§ 6-108:1 Auction sales

U.C.C. § 6-109 What Creditors Protected; [Credit for Payment to Particular Creditors]
§ 6-109:1 Protected creditors
§ 6-109:2 Credit for payment to particular creditors

U.C.C. § 6-110 Subsequent Transfers
§ 6-110:1 Transfer subject to defect by reason of noncompliance with Article 6
§ 6-110:2 Transfer by the transferee which also falls into the category of noncomplying bulk transfers
§ 6-110:3 Transferee who cuts off the rights of transferor’s
creditors by subsequent conveyance to a bona fide purchaser

U.C.C. § 6-111 Limitation of Actions and Levies
§ 6-111:1 Statute of limitations
§ 6-111:2 Concealment

ARTICLE 6 [REV] BULK SALES

U.C.C. § 6-101 [Rev] Short Title
§ 6-101:1 [Rev] The genesis of Revised Article 6
§ 6-101:2 [Rev] Arguments for adoption of Alternative A; repeal original Article 6 and do not enact bulk sale legislation
§ 6-101:3 [Rev] Arguments against adoption of Alternative A and for adoption of Revised Article 6
§ 6-101:4 [Rev] The outcome of the debate over Article 6

U.C.C. § 6-102 [Rev] Definitions and Index of Definitions
§ 6-102:1 [Rev] Definitions—In general

U.C.C. § 6-103 [Rev] Applicability of Article
§ 6-103:1 [Rev] Organization of scope provisions
§ 6-103:2 [Rev] Applicability of article: what is included?
§ 6-103:3 [Rev] Bulk sale defined—Generally
§ 6-103:4 [Rev] Auction and liquidation sales not exempt from coverage
§ 6-103:5 [Rev] Ordinary course limitations
§ 6-103:6 [Rev] Quantitative limitations
§ 6-103:7 [Rev] —Notice that seller will not continue to operate same or similar kind of business after sale
§ 6-103:8 [Rev] Notice of liquidation
§ 6-103:9 [Rev] Enterprise limitation on scope
§ 6-103:10 [Rev] Exclusions—Security interests
§ 6-103:11 [Rev] Where creditors adequately protected
§ 6-103:12 [Rev] —Assumption of debts; transfers to new enterprises organized to take over transferor
§ 6-103:13 [Rev] —Very small and very large sales of assets

U.C.C. § 6-104 [Rev] Obligations of Buyer
§ 6-104:1 [Rev] Duties of buyer in general
§ 6-104:2 [Rev] Compliance—List of seller’s recent names and addresses
§ 6-104:3 [Rev] —List of claimants
§ 6-104:4 [Rev] —Schedule of distribution
§ 6-104:5 [Rev] —Notice to claimants; distribution of net contract price

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 cxxix
§ 6-104:6 [Rev] —Making available list of claimants to all claimants

U.C.C. § 6-105 [Rev] Notice to Claimants
§ 6-105:1 [Rev] Notice—In general
§ 6-105:2 [Rev] —Other than by filing
§ 6-105:3 [Rev] —By filing
§ 6-105:4 [Rev] Contents of notice
§ 6-105:5 [Rev] When notice must be given

U.C.C. § 6-106 [Rev] Schedule of Distribution
§ 6-106:1 [Rev] In general
§ 6-106:2 [Rev] Formal requisites of schedule of distribution
§ 6-106:3 [Rev] Net contract price
§ 6-106:4 [Rev] Duty to carry out schedule of distribution

U.C.C. § 6-107 [Rev] Liability for Noncompliance
§ 6-107:1 [Rev] Nature of buyer’s liability
§ 6-107:2 [Rev] Basic damage formula
§ 6-107:3 [Rev] Burden of proof of damages
§ 6-107:4 [Rev] Good faith limitation on damages
§ 6-107:5 [Rev] Cap on liability
§ 6-107:6 [Rev] Other solicitude shown to buyer

U.C.C. § 6-108 [Rev] Bulk Sales by Auction; Bulk Sales Conducted by Liquidator
§ 6-108:1 [Rev] Bulk sales by auction or conducted by liquidator—In general
§ 6-108:2 [Rev] Special provisions for auctioneers and liquidators

U.C.C. § 6-109 [Rev] What Constitutes Filing; Duties of Filing Officer; Information from Filing Officer
§ 6-109:1 [Rev] Filing system
U.C.C. § 6-110 [Rev] Limitation of Actions
§ 6-110:1 [Rev] Basic limitation of action
§ 6-110:2 [Rev] Concealment
§ 6-110:3 [Rev] Insiders

Volume 7

ARTICLE 7 WAREHOUSE RECEIPTS, BILLS OF LADING AND OTHER DOCUMENTS OF TITLE

PART 1 GENERAL
U.C.C. § 7-101 Short Title
§ 7-101:1 Introduction to Article 7

cxxx
### Table of Contents

- **§ 7-101:2** Documents of title
- U.C.C. § 7-102 Definitions and Index of Definitions
  - **§ 7-102:1** Definitions
  - **§ 7-102:2** Bills of lading
  - **§ 7-102:3** Warehouse receipts
  - **§ 7-102:4** Delivery orders
  - **§ 7-102:5** Dock receipts and dock warrants
  - **§ 7-102:6** Bailee
  - **§ 7-102:7** Consignor and consignee
  - **§ 7-102:8** Goods
  - **§ 7-102:9** Issuer
  - **§ 7-102:10** Warehouseman
- U.C.C. § 7-103 Relation of Article to Treaty, Statute, Tariff, Classification or Regulation
  - **§ 7-103:1** Limitations on the scope of Article 7
  - **§ 7-103:2** Federal transportation law
  - **§ 7-103:3** Federal storage law
- U.C.C. § 7-104 Negotiable and Non-Negotiable Warehouse Receipt, Bill of Lading or Other Document of Title
  - **§ 7-104:1** In general
- U.C.C. § 7-105 Construction Against Negative Implication
  - **§ 7-105:1** Special rule of construction

#### PART 2 WAREHOUSE RECEIPTS: SPECIAL PROVISIONS

- U.C.C. § 7-201 Who May Issue a Warehouse Receipt; Storage Under Government Bond
  - **§ 7-201:1** Authority to issue warehouse receipts
- U.C.C. § 7-202 Form of Warehouse Receipt; Essential Terms; Optional Terms
  - **§ 7-202:1** Form and terms of warehouse receipts
- U.C.C. § 7-203 Liability for Non-Receipt or Misdescription
  - **§ 7-203:1** Liability of issuer for nonreceipt or misdescription of goods
- U.C.C. § 7-204 Duty of Care; Contractual Limitation of Warehouseman’s Liability
  - **§ 7-204:1** Standard of care for warehousemen
  - **§ 7-204:2** Burden of proof
  - **§ 7-204:3** Limitation of liability
  - **§ 7-204:4** —Effect of conversion on limitation of liability
  - **§ 7-204:5** Limitations on presenting claims and commencing actions
  - **§ 7-204:6** Measure of damages

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 cxxxi
U.C.C. § 7-205 Title Under Warehouse Receipt Defeated in Certain Cases
§ 7-205:1 Protection for certain buyers of fungible goods

U.C.C. § 7-206 Termination of Storage at Warehouseman’s Option
§ 7-206:1 Restrictions on termination of storage by warehouseman
§ 7-206:2 —Hazardous goods or goods that are deteriorating or declining in value

U.C.C. § 7-207 Goods Must Be Kept Separate; Fungible Goods
§ 7-207:1 Requirement that goods be kept separate
§ 7-207:2 Commingling of fungible goods

U.C.C. § 7-208 Altered Warehouse Receipts
§ 7-208:1 Rights and liabilities on altered warehouse receipts

U.C.C. § 7-209 Lien of Warehouseman
§ 7-209:1 In general
§ 7-209:2 Types of liens
§ 7-209:3 —Charges covered
§ 7-209:4 —Effectiveness of warehouseman’s lien
§ 7-209:5 Loss of lien

U.C.C. § 7-210 Enforcement of Warehouseman’s Lien
§ 7-210:1 Constitutionality of enforcement provisions
§ 7-210:2 Enforcement procedures
§ 7-210:3 Notice and advertising requirements
§ 7-210:4 Commercially reasonable requirement
§ 7-210:5 Liability of warehouseman

PART 3 BILLS OF LADING: SPECIAL PROVISIONS
U.C.C. § 7-301 Liability for Non-Receipt or Misdescription; “Said to Contain”; “Shipper’s Load and Count”; Improper Handling
§ 7-301:1 In general
§ 7-301:2 Exculpatory language

U.C.C. § 7-302 Through Bills of Lading and Similar Documents
§ 7-302:1 Issuer’s liability
§ 7-302:2 Connecting carrier’s liability
§ 7-302:3 Issuer’s right of indemnification; damages

U.C.C. § 7-303 Diversion; Reconsignment; Change of Instructions
§ 7-303:1 In general
§ 7-303:2 Consignee’s title to the goods

U.C.C. § 7-304 Bills of Lading in a Set
§ 7-304:1 In general

U.C.C. § 7-305 Destination Bills

cxxxii
§ 7-305:1 In general
U.C.C. § 7-306 Altered Bills of Lading
§ 7-306:1 In general
U.C.C. § 7-307 Lien of Carrier
§ 7-307:1 In general
§ 7-307:2 Parties against whom the lien is effective
U.C.C. § 7-308 Enforcement of Carrier’s Lien
§ 7-308:1 In general; notice
§ 7-308:2 Commercially reasonable sale
§ 7-308:3 Purchaser of goods; proceeds
§ 7-308:4 Conversion; damages
U.C.C. § 7-309 Duty of Care; Contractual Limitation of Carrier’s Liability
§ 7-309:1 In general
§ 7-309:2 Common carrier as insurer of goods
§ 7-309:3 Inception and termination of carrier’s duties
§ 7-309:4 Prima facie case of liability; burdens of proof
§ 7-309:5 Provisions for presenting claims and instituting actions
§ 7-309:6 Notice of claim requirements
§ 7-309:7 Real parties in interest
§ 7-309:8 Time-barred claims and actions; estoppel
§ 7-309:9 Contractual limitation of carrier’s liability for damages
§ 7-309:10 —Notice and opportunity to declare a higher value
§ 7-309:11 —Effectiveness
§ 7-309:12 Determination of damages
§ 7-309:13 —Multiple carriers

PART 4 WAREHOUSE RECEIPTS AND BILLS OF LADING:
GENERAL OBLIGATIONS
U.C.C. § 7-401 Irregularities in Issue of Receipt or Bill or Conduct of Issuer
§ 7-401:1 In general
U.C.C. § 7-402 Duplicate Receipt or Bill; Overissue
§ 7-402:1 In general
U.C.C. § 7-403 Obligation of Warehouseman or Carrier to Deliver; Excuse
§ 7-403:1 Bailee’s obligation to deliver
§ 7-403:2 Person entitled under the document
§ 7-403:3 —Misdelivery
§ 7-403:4 Excuse
§ 7-403:5 Bailee’s lien

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018  cxxxiii
§ 7-403:6  Surrender of the documents
§ 7-403:7  Damages and limitation of liability
U.C.C. § 7-404  No Liability for Good Faith Delivery Pursuant to Receipt or Bill
§ 7-404:1  In general

PART 5 WAREHOUSE RECEIPTS AND BILLS OF LADING: NEGOTIATION AND TRANSFER
U.C.C. § 7-501  Form of Negotiation and Requirements of “Due Negotiation”
§ 7-501:1  In general
U.C.C. § 7-502  Rights Acquired by Due Negotiation
§ 7-502:1  In general
U.C.C. § 7-503  Document of Title to Goods Defeated in Certain Cases
§ 7-503:1  In general
§ 7-503:2  Unaccepted delivery orders
§ 7-503:3  Freight forwarder’s bills
U.C.C. § 7-504  Rights Acquired in the Absence of Due Negotiation; Effect of Diversion; Seller’s Stoppage of Delivery
§ 7-504:1  Rights of a transferee of document
§ 7-504:2  Defeating a transferee’s rights
§ 7-504:3  Consignor’s right of diversion
§ 7-504:4  Seller’s stoppage of delivery
U.C.C. § 7-505  Indorser Not a Guarantor for Other Parties
§ 7-505:1  In general
U.C.C. § 7-506  Delivery Without Indorsement: Right to Compel Indorsement
§ 7-506:1  In general
U.C.C. § 7-507  Warranties on Negotiation or Transfer of Receipt or Bill
§ 7-507:1  In general
U.C.C. § 7-508  Warranties of Collecting Bank as to Documents
§ 7-508:1  In general
U.C.C. § 7-509  Receipt or Bill: When Adequate Compliance With Commercial Contract
§ 7-509:1  In general

PART 6 WAREHOUSE RECEIPTS AND BILLS OF LADING: MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
U.C.C. § 7-601  Lost and Missing Documents
§ 7-601:1  In general
U.C.C. § 7-602  Attachment of Goods Covered by a Negotiable Document

UNIFORM COMMERCIAL CODE SERIES  cxxxiv
\textbf{ARTICLE 7 [REV] DOCUMENTS OF TITLE}

\textbf{PART 1 [REV] GENERAL}

\begin{itemize}
  \item U.C.C. § 7-101 [Rev] Short Title
  \item § 7-101:1 [Rev] Introduction to Article 7
  \item § 7-101:2 [Rev] Documents of title
  \item U.C.C. § 7-102 [Rev] Definitions and Index of Definitions
  \item § 7-102:1 [Rev] Definitions
  \item § 7-102:2 [Rev] Bills of lading
  \item § 7-102:3 [Rev] Warehouse receipts
  \item § 7-102:4 [Rev] Delivery orders
  \item § 7-102:5 [Rev] Dock receipts and dock warrants
  \item § 7-102:6 [Rev] Bailee; warehouse and carrier
  \item § 7-102:7 [Rev] Consignor, consignee, shipper, and person entitled under the document
  \item § 7-102:8 [Rev] Goods
  \item § 7-102:9 [Rev] Issuer
  \item § 7-102:10 [Rev] Good faith
  \item § 7-102:11 [Rev] Record and sign
  \item U.C.C. § 7-103 [Rev] Relation of Article to Treaty or Statute
  \item § 7-103:1 [Rev] Limitations on the scope of Article 7
  \item § 7-103:2 [Rev] Relationship to E-Sign and UETA
  \item U.C.C. § 7-104 [Rev] Negotiable and Nonnegotiable Document of Title
  \item § 7-104:1 [Rev] In general
  \item U.C.C. § 7-105 [Rev] Reissuance in Alternative Medium
  \item § 7-105:1 [Rev] In general
  \item U.C.C. § 7-106 [Rev] Control of Electronic Document of Title
  \item § 7-106:1 [Rev] In general
\end{itemize}

\textbf{PART 2 [REV] WAREHOUSE RECEIPTS: SPECIAL PROVISIONS}

\begin{itemize}
  \item U.C.C. § 7-201 [Rev] Person That May Issue a Warehouse Receipt; Storage Under Bond
  \item § 7-201:1 [Rev] Authority to issue warehouse receipts
  \item U.C.C. § 7-202 [Rev] Form of Warehouse Receipt; Effect of Omission
  \item § 7-202:1 [Rev] Form and terms of warehouse receipts
  \item U.C.C. § 7-203 [Rev] Liability for Nonreceipt or Misdescription
\end{itemize}
§ 7-203:1 [Rev] Liability of issuer for nonreceipt or misdescription of goods

U.C.C. § 7-204 [Rev] Duty of Care; Contractual Limitation of Warehouse's Liability

§ 7-204:1 [Rev] Standard of care for a warehouse
§ 7-204:2 [Rev] Burden of proof
§ 7-204:3 [Rev] Limitation of liability
§ 7-204:4 [Rev] —Effect of conversion on limitation of liability
§ 7-204:5 [Rev] Limitations on presenting claims and commencing actions
§ 7-204:6 [Rev] Measure of damages

U.C.C. § 7-205 [Rev] Title Under Warehouse Receipt Defeated in Certain Cases

§ 7-205:1 [Rev] Protection for certain buyers of fungible goods

U.C.C. § 7-206 [Rev] Termination of Storage at Warehouse's Option

§ 7-206:1 [Rev] Restrictions on termination of storage by warehouse
§ 7-206:2 [Rev] —Hazardous goods or goods that are deteriorating or declining in value

U.C.C. § 7-207 [Rev] Goods Must Be Kept Separate; Fungible Goods

§ 7-207:1 [Rev] Requirement that goods be kept separate
§ 7-207:2 [Rev] Commingling of fungible goods

U.C.C. § 7-208 [Rev] Altered Warehouse Receipts

§ 7-208:1 [Rev] Rights and liabilities on altered warehouse receipts

U.C.C. § 7-209 [Rev] Lien of Warehouse

§ 7-209:1 [Rev] In general
§ 7-209:2 [Rev] Types of liens
§ 7-209:3 [Rev] —Charges covered
§ 7-209:4 [Rev] —Effectiveness of warehouse's lien
§ 7-209:5 [Rev] Loss of lien

U.C.C. § 7-210 [Rev] Enforcement of Warehouse's Lien

§ 7-210:1 [Rev] Constitutionality of enforcement provisions
§ 7-210:2 [Rev] Enforcement procedures
§ 7-210:3 [Rev] Notice and advertising requirements
§ 7-210:4 [Rev] Commercially reasonable requirement
§ 7-210:5 [Rev] Liability of warehouse for violation of foreclosure requirements
# Table of Contents

**PART 3 [REV] BILLS OF LADING: SPECIAL PROVISIONS**

U.C.C. § 7-301 [Rev] Liability for Nonreceipt or Misdescription; “Said to Contain”; “Shipper's Weight, Load, and Count”; Improper Handling

§ 7-301:1 [Rev] In general
§ 7-301:2 [Rev] Exculpatory language

U.C.C. § 7-302 [Rev] Through Bills of Lading and Similar Documents of Title

§ 7-302:1 [Rev] Issuer’s liability
§ 7-302:2 [Rev] Performing carrier’s liability
§ 7-302:3 [Rev] Issuer’s right of indemnification; damages

U.C.C. § 7-303 [Rev] Diversion; Reconsignment; Change of Instructions

§ 7-303:1 [Rev] In general
§ 7-303:2 [Rev] Consignee’s title to the goods; carrier’s liability

U.C.C. § 7-304 [Rev] Tangible Bills of Lading in a Set

§ 7-304:1 [Rev] In general

U.C.C. § 7-305 [Rev] Destination Bills

§ 7-305:1 [Rev] In general


§ 7-306:1 [Rev] In general

U.C.C. § 7-307 [Rev] Lien of Carrier

§ 7-307:1 [Rev] In general
§ 7-307:2 [Rev] Parties against whom the lien is effective

U.C.C. § 7-308 [Rev] Enforcement of Carrier’s Lien

§ 7-308:1 [Rev] In general
§ 7-308:2 [Rev] Commercially reasonable sale
§ 7-308:3 [Rev] Purchaser of goods; proceeds
§ 7-308:4 [Rev] Conversion; damages

U.C.C. § 7-309 [Rev] Duty of Care; Contractual Limitation of Carrier’s Liability

§ 7-309:1 [Rev] In general
§ 7-309:2 [Rev] Insurer of goods
§ 7-309:3 [Rev] Inception and termination of carrier’s duties
§ 7-309:4 [Rev] Prima facie case of liability
§ 7-309:5 [Rev] Provisions for presenting claims and instituting actions
§ 7-309:6 [Rev] Notice of claim requirements
§ 7-309:7 [Rev] Real parties in interest
§ 7-309:8 [Rev] Time-barred claims and actions; estoppel
§ 7-309:9 [Rev] Contractual limitation of carrier’s liability for damages

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018  cxxxvii
PART 4 [REV]. WAREHOUSE RECEIPTS AND BILLS OF LADING: GENERAL OBLIGATIONS
U.C.C. § 7-401 [Rev] Irregularities in Issue of Receipt or Bill or Conduct of Issuer
§ 7-401:1 [Rev] In general
U.C.C. § 7-402 [Rev] Duplicate Document of Title; Overissue
§ 7-402:1 [Rev] In general
U.C.C. § 7-403 [Rev] Obligation of Bailee to Deliver; Excuse
§ 7-403:1 [Rev] Bailee’s obligation to deliver
§ 7-403:2 [Rev] Person entitled under the document
§ 7-403:3 [Rev] —Misdelivery
§ 7-403:4 [Rev] Excuse
§ 7-403:5 [Rev] Bailee’s lien
§ 7-403:6 [Rev] Surrender of the documents
§ 7-403:7 [Rev] Damages and limitation of liability
U.C.C. § 7-404 [Rev] No Liability for Good-Faith Delivery Pursuant to Document of Title
§ 7-404:1 [Rev] In general

PART 5 [REV]. WAREHOUSE RECEIPTS AND BILLS OF LADING: NEGOTIATION AND TRANSFER
U.C.C. § 7-501 [Rev] Form of Negotiation and Requirements of Due Negotiation
§ 7-501:1 [Rev] In general
U.C.C. § 7-502 [Rev] Rights Acquired by Due Negotiation
§ 7-502:1 [Rev] In general
U.C.C. § 7-503 [Rev] Document of Title to Goods Defeated in Certain Cases
§ 7-503:1 [Rev] In general
§ 7-503:2 [Rev] Unaccepted delivery orders
§ 7-503:3 [Rev] Freight forwarder’s bills
U.C.C. § 7-504 [Rev] Rights Acquired in Absence of Due Negotiation; Effect of Diversion; Stoppage of Delivery
§ 7-504:1 [Rev] Rights of a transferee of document
§ 7-504:2 [Rev] Defeating a transferee’s rights
§ 7-504:3 [Rev] Consignor’s right of diversion
§ 7-504:4 [Rev] Stoppage of delivery
§ 8-102:8 —“Security”
§ 8-102:9 —“Certificated security”
§ 8-102:10 —“Uncertificated security”

Sec. 8-103 Issuer’s Lien
§ 8-103:1 General validity of issuer’s lien
§ 8-103:2 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-104 Effect of Overissue; “Overissue”
§ 8-104:1 Definition of “overissue.”
§ 8-104:2 Effect of overissue
§ 8-104:3 Remedies for overissuance—Forced purchase of identical security
§ 8-104:4 —Damages
§ 8-104:5 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-105 Securities Negotiable: Presumptions
§ 8-105:1 Securities as negotiable instruments
§ 8-105:2 “Action on a security.”
§ 8-105:3 Signatures admitted unless denied
§ 8-105:4 Burden of establishing genuineness of signatures
§ 8-105:5 Rights of holder upon production of instrument in absence of defense or defect
§ 8-105:6 Burden of establishing effectiveness of defense or defect
§ 8-105:7 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-106 Applicability
§ 8-106:1 In general
§ 8-106:2 Scope of section
§ 8-106:3 Conflict of laws rules
§ 8-106:4 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-107 Securities Deliverable; Action for Price
§ 8-107:1 Securities as deliverable; Securities as fungible
§ 8-107:2 Form of delivery
§ 8-107:3 Action for the price
§ 8-107:4 Damages other than action for the price; Relationship with Article 2
§ 8-107:5 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-108 Registration of Pledge and Release of Uncertificated Securities
§ 8-108:1 Registered pledge
§ 8-108:2 Multiple registration of pledges
§ 8-108:3 Rights of pledgor

cxl
§ 8-205:1 In general  
§ 8-205:2 Requirements for signatures on certificates  
§ 8-205:3 Effect of unauthorized signature  
§ 8-205:4 Burden of proof  
§ 8-205:5 Effect of 1977 amendments  

Sec. 8-206 Completion or Alteration of Instrument  
§ 8-206:1 Incorrectly completed security  
§ 8-206:2 Improper alteration  
§ 8-206:3 Effect of 1977 amendments  

Sec. 8-207 Rights and Duties of Issuer With Respect to Registered Owners and Registered Pledgees  
§ 8-207:1 In general  
§ 8-207:2 Liability for calls and assessments  
§ 8-207:3 Effect of 1977 amendments  

Sec. 8-208 Effect of Signature of Authenticating Trustee, Registrar, or Transfer Agent  
§ 8-208:1 Agent’s warranties—In general  
§ 8-208:2 —Genuineness of security  
§ 8-208:3 —Capacity and authority  
§ 8-208:4 —Form and amount  
§ 8-208:5 Effect of 1977 amendments  

PART 3 TRANSFER  

Sec. 8-301 Rights Acquired by Purchaser  
§ 8-301:1 Purchaser’s rights upon delivery  
§ 8-301:2 —Rights of bona fide purchaser  
§ 8-301:3 —Limitation on rights acquired by party to fraud or illegality  
§ 8-301:4 —Limitation on rights acquired by prior holder with notice of adverse claim  
§ 8-301:5 “Adverse claim” defined  
§ 8-301:6 Purchase of limited interest  
§ 8-301:7 Effect of 1977 amendments  

Sec. 8-302 “Bona Fide Purchaser”; “Adverse Claim”; Title Acquired by Bona Fide Purchaser  
§ 8-302:1 In general  
§ 8-302:2 Requirement of purchase  
§ 8-302:3 For value  
§ 8-302:4 In good faith  
§ 8-302:5 Without notice of adverse claims  
§ 8-302:6 Security in bearer form or in registered form issued to him or indorsed to him or in blank  

cxlii
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 8-302:7 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-303 “Broker”

§ 8-303:1 “Broker” defined
§ 8-303:2 Brokers’ transactions on stock exchanges and in over-the-counter market
§ 8-303:3 Other statutory definitions preserved
§ 8-303:4 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-304 Notice to Purchaser of Adverse Claims

§ 8-304:1 In general
§ 8-304:2 Security indorsed for purpose not involving transfer
§ 8-304:3 Transfer of security by fiduciary
§ 8-304:4 New York rule
§ 8-304:5 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-305 Staleness as Notice of Adverse Claims

§ 8-305:1 Staleness alone not notice of adverse claims
§ 8-305:2 When staleness constitutes notice of adverse claims
§ 8-305:3 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-306 Warranties on Presentment and Transfer of Certificated Securities; Warranties of Originators of Instructions

§ 8-306:1 Warranties on presentment—In general
§ 8-306:2 —Special purchasers
§ 8-306:3 Warranties on transfer—In general
§ 8-306:4 —Intermediaries
§ 8-306:5 —Pledgees
§ 8-306:6 —Brokers
§ 8-306:7 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-307 Effect of Delivery Without Indorsement; Right to Compel Indorsement

§ 8-307:1 Delivery of security in registered form without indorsement
§ 8-307:2 Right to compel indorsement
§ 8-307:3 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-308 Indorsements; Instructions

§ 8-308:1 Making of indorsement
§ 8-308:2 —Special indorsement
§ 8-308:3 —Indorsement in blank
§ 8-308:4 —Converting form of indorsement
§ 8-308:5 “Appropriate person”
§ 8-308:6 Liability of indorser if security not honored by issuer
§ 8-308:7 Indorsement transferring part of security
§ 8-308:8 Effect of change in circumstances
§ 8-308:9 Fiduciary's failure to comply with instrument or other state law
§ 8-308:10 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-309 Effect of Indorsement Without Delivery
§ 8-309:1 Effect of indorsement without delivery
§ 8-309:2 Nondelivery of a gift
§ 8-309:3 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-310 Indorsement of Certificated Security in Bearer Form
§ 8-310:1 Indorsement of security in bearer form
§ 8-310:2 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-311 Effect of Unauthorized Indorsement or Instruction
§ 8-311:1 Owner's right to security transferred on unauthorized indorsement
§ 8-311:2 Persons who take free of owner's claim
§ 8-311:3 Liability of issuer for registration of security with unauthorized indorsement
§ 8-311:4 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-312 Effect of Guaranteeing Signature, Indorsement or Instruction
§ 8-312:1 Signature guarantee—In general
§ 8-312:2 —Warranty that signature was genuine
§ 8-312:3 —Warranty that the signer was an appropriate person
§ 8-312:4 —Warranty that the signer has capacity to sign
§ 8-312:5 —Guarantor does not warrant rightfulness of transfer
§ 8-312:6 Guarantee of indorsement
§ 8-312:7 Need for reliance
§ 8-312:8 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-313 When Transfer to Purchaser Occurs: Financial Intermediary as Bona Fide Purchaser; “Financial Intermediary”
§ 8-313:1 Delivery—In general
§ 8-313:2 —Acquisition by purchaser or person designated by him
§ 8-313:3 —Transactions involving a broker
§ 8-313:4 —Acknowledgment by another
§ 8-313:5 Who is a holder; Securities part of a fungible bulk
§ 8-313:6 Notice of adverse claim received after delivery
§ 8-313:7 Effect of 1977 amendments

cxliv
§ 8-318:5 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-319 Statute of Frauds
§ 8-319:1 Background
§ 8-319:2 Application to any sale of securities
§ 8-319:3 Satisfying the statute—Some signed writing
§ 8-319:4 —Quantity, price and description
§ 8-319:5 —Delivery or payment
§ 8-319:6 —Written confirmation
§ 8-319:7 —Admissions
§ 8-319:8 Estoppel
§ 8-319:9 Effect of noncompliance
§ 8-319:10 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-320 Transfer or Pledge Within Central Depository System
§ 8-320:1 In general
§ 8-320:2 Book entry transfers and pledges
§ 8-320:3 Securities as fungible
§ 8-320:4 Book entry transfer as equivalent to delivery
§ 8-320:5 Book entry transfer as not equivalent to registration of transfer
§ 8-320:6 Incorrect entries
§ 8-320:7 Effect of 1977 amendments

Sec. 8-321 Enforceability, Attachment, Perfection and Termination of Security Interests
§ 8-321:1 Security interests in securities: Background
§ 8-321:2 Relationship between Articles 8 and 9 where investment securities are used as collateral
§ 8-321:3 Creation and perfection of security interests in certificated security where owner has possession as model
§ 8-321:4 Creation and perfection of security interests in uncertificated securities—Senior interests
§ 8-321:5 —Junior Interests
§ 8-321:6 GNMA example of perfecting a security interest in certificated and uncertificated securities that also are pledged within a central depository system [New]

PART 4 REGISTRATION

Sec. 8-401 Duty of Issuer to Register Transfer, Pledge, or Release
§ 8-401:1 In general
§ 8-401:2 Duty to register transfer
§ 8-401:3 No duty to register if not otherwise rightful
| § 8-401:4 | Liability for refusal to register transfer  |
| § 8-401:5 | Effect of 1977 amendments  |
| Sec. 8-402 Assurance that Indorsements and Instructions Are Effective  |
| § 8-402:1 | In general  |
| § 8-402:2 | Guarantee of signature of indorser  |
| § 8-402:3 | Proof of authority as agent  |
| § 8-402:4 | Evidence of appointment or incumbency as fiduciary  |
| § 8-402:5 | Indorsement by person other than agent or fiduciary  |
| § 8-402:6 | Additional reasonable assurance  |
| § 8-402:7 | Effect of 1977 amendments  |
| Sec. 8-403 Issuer’s Duty as to Adverse Claims  |
| § 8-403:1 | In general  |
| § 8-403:2 | Notification to issuer  |
| § 8-403:3 | Nonexclusivity of form of notice  |
| § 8-403:4 | Methods of discharging duty of inquiry  |
| § 8-403:5 | Absence of duty to inquire  |
| § 8-403:6 | Effect of 1977 amendments  |
| Sec. 8-404 Liability and Non-Liability for Registration  |
| § 8-404:1 | Importance of accurate registration  |
| § 8-404:2 | Nonliability for registration  |
| § 8-404:3 | Liability for registration  |
| § 8-404:4 | Remedy  |
| § 8-404:5 | Effect of 1977 amendments  |
| Sec. 8-405 Lost, Destroyed, and Stolen Certificated Securities  |
| § 8-405:1 | In general  |
| § 8-405:2 | Notice to issuer  |
| § 8-405:3 | Issue of replacement security  |
| § 8-405:4 | Intervening bona fide purchaser  |
| § 8-405:5 | Effect of 1977 amendments  |
| Sec. 8-406 Duty of Authenticating Trustee, Transfer Agent, or Registrar  |
| § 8-406:1 | Definitions  |
| § 8-406:2 | Duty to issuer  |
| § 8-406:3 | Agent’s duty to holder, owner or pledgee of security  |
| § 8-406:4 | Notice to agent  |
| § 8-406:5 | Effect of 1977 amendments  |
| Sec. 8-407 Exchangeability of Securities  |
| § 8-407:1 | Effect of 1977 amendments  |
| § 8-407:2 | —Class of securities  |

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 8-407:3 —Exchange of certificated for uncertificated security  
§ 8-407:4 —Exchange of uncertificated for certificated security  

Sec. 8-408 Statements of Uncertificated Securities  
§ 8-408:1 Purpose of section 8-408; Effect of 1977 amendments  
§ 8-408:2 Initial transaction statements  
§ 8-408:3 Periodic statements  

Volume 7A  
ARTICLE 8 [REV] INVESTMENT SECURITIES  

PART 1 SHORT TITLE AND GENERAL MATTERS  
U.C.C. § 8-101 [Rev] Short Title  
§ 8-101:1 [Rev] Overview of revised Article 8  
§ 8-101:3 [Rev] —Systemic risk and legal uncertainty  
§ 8-101:5 [Rev] Scope of Revised Article 8  
U.C.C. § 8-102 [Rev] Definitions  
§ 8-102:3 [Rev] “Indorsement,” “instruction,” “entitlement order”  
§ 8-102:5 [Rev] “Clearing corporation”  
§ 8-102:6 [Rev] “Securities intermediary” and “broker”  
§ 8-102:8 [Rev] “Adverse claim”  
§ 8-102:9 [Rev] “Communicate”  
§ 8-102:10 [Rev] “Good faith”  
§ 8-103:1 [Rev] Special rules on treatment of particular kinds of interests  
§ 8-103:2 [Rev] Equity interests in business associations  
§ 8-103:3 [Rev] Investment company shares  

cxlviii
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 8-103:4 [Rev] Partnership and limited liability interests
§ 8-103:5 [Rev] Article 3 negotiable instruments
§ 8-103:6 [Rev] Options
§ 8-103:7 [Rev] Commodity contracts
§ 8-103:8 [Rev] Documents of title

U.C.C. § 8-104 [Rev] Acquisition of Security or Financial Asset or Interest Therein

§ 8-104:1 [Rev] In general
§ 8-104:2 [Rev] Acquisition, under Article 8, of property interests in securities
§ 8-104:3 [Rev] Acquisition, under Article 8, of property interests in financial assets other than securities
§ 8-104:4 [Rev] Entitlement holder as purchaser
§ 8-104:5 [Rev] Acquisition of security or security entitlement as different means of acquiring property interest; Relationship between terms “security” and “security entitlement”

U.C.C. § 8-105 [Rev] Notice of Adverse Claim

§ 8-105:1 [Rev] Role of notice of adverse claim rules in Revised Article 8
§ 8-105:2 [Rev] Willful blindness test
§ 8-105:3 [Rev] Statutory or regulatory duty of inquiry
§ 8-105:4 [Rev] Transfer of security by representative
§ 8-105:5 [Rev] Staleness as notice of adverse claims
§ 8-105:6 [Rev] Security indorsed for purpose not involving transfer

U.C.C. § 8-106 [Rev] Control

§ 8-106:1 [Rev] Control—In general
§ 8-106:2 [Rev] —Certificated securities
§ 8-106:3 [Rev] —Uncertificated securities
§ 8-106:4 [Rev] —Security entitlements

U.C.C. § 8-107 [Rev] Whether Indorsement, Instruction, or Entitlement Order Is Effective

§ 8-107:1 [Rev] Function of provisions on effectiveness and appropriate person
§ 8-107:2 [Rev] Appropriate person
§ 8-107:3 [Rev] Effectiveness—In general
§ 8-107:4 [Rev] Effectiveness of directions by representatives


§ 8-108:2 [Rev] Warranties made to purchasers

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 8-108:3 [Rev] Warranties made to issuers
and of secured party
§ 8-109:1 [Rev] Warranties made by originator of entitlement
order
§ 8-109:2 [Rev] Warranties on change of position from direct
to indirect holding system
§ 8-109:3 [Rev] Warranties on change of position from
indirect to direct holding system
U.C.C. § 8-110 [Rev] Applicability; Choice of Law
§ 8-110:1 [Rev] Choice of law—In general
§ 8-110:2 [Rev] Matters governed by law of issuer’s
jurisdiction
§ 8-110:3 [Rev] Matters governed by law of jurisdiction where
certificate is located
§ 8-110:4 [Rev] Matters governed by law of securities
intermediary’s jurisdiction
U.C.C. § 8-111 [Rev] Clearing Corporation Rules
§ 8-111:1 [Rev] Effectiveness of clearing corporation rules
§ 8-111:2 [Rev] Regulatory oversight of clearing corporation
rules
U.C.C. § 8-112 [Rev] Creditor’s Legal Process
§ 8-112:1 [Rev] Creditor’s legal process
U.C.C. § 8-113 [Rev] Statute of Frauds Inapplicable
§ 8-113:1 [Rev] Statute of frauds inapplicable
U.C.C. § 8-114 [Rev] Evidentiary Rules Concerning Certificated
Securities
§ 8-114:1 [Rev] Evidentiary rules in actions on certificated
securities—In general
§ 8-114:2 [Rev] Changes from old version of Article 8
U.C.C. § 8-115 [Rev] Securities Intermediary and Others Not
Liable to Adverse Claimant
§ 8-115:1 [Rev] Liability of securities intermediaries, brokers,
and other agents and bailees—In general
§ 8-115:2 [Rev] Differences from prior law; Relationship
between conduit nonliability provision and
purchaser nonliability provisions
§ 8-115:3 [Rev] Intermediary’s liability not dependent upon
notice; requirement of injunction for
adverse claimant; collusion standard;
special rule for stolen certificates
TABLE OF CONTENTS

U.C.C. § 8-116 [Rev] Securities Intermediary as Purchaser for Value
§ 8-116:1 [Rev] Securities intermediary as purchaser for value

PART 2 ISSUE AND ISSUER
U.C.C. § 8-201 [Rev] Issuer
§ 8-201:1 [Rev] Purpose of definition of “issuer”
§ 8-201:2 [Rev] General definition of “issuer”
§ 8-201:3 [Rev] Successors and guarantors as issuers
U.C.C. § 8-202 [Rev] Issuer’s Responsibility and Defenses; Notice of Defect or Defense
§ 8-202:1 [Rev] Terms of security; Issuer’s defenses—Drafting history and 1994 revision
§ 8-202:2 [Rev] Indication of terms of security—Certificated securities
§ 8-202:5 [Rev] —Indirect holding system
§ 8-202:6 [Rev] Preclusion of issuer’s defenses—In general
§ 8-202:7 [Rev] —Indirect holding system
U.C.C. § 8-203 [Rev] Staleness as Notice of Defect or Defense
§ 8-203:1 [Rev] Staleness as notice of issuer’s defenses
U.C.C. § 8-204 [Rev] Effect of Issuer’s Restriction on Transfer
§ 8-204:1 [Rev] Restriction on transfer—Certificated securities
§ 8-204:2 [Rev] —Uncertificated securities
§ 8-204:3 [Rev] Transfer restrictions—Indirect holding system
§ 8-205:1 [Rev] Unauthorized signature on security certificate
§ 8-205:2 [Rev] Effect of 1994 revision concerning uncertificated securities
U.C.C. § 8-206 [Rev] Completion or Alteration of Security Certificate
§ 8-206:1 [Rev] Completion or alteration of security certificates—In general
U.C.C. § 8-207 [Rev] Rights and Duties of Issuer with Respect to Registered Owners
§ 8-207:1 [Rev] Issuer’s rights with respected to registered owners—In general

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
U.C.C. § 8-208 [Rev] Effect of Signature of Authenticating Trustee, Registrar, or Transfer Agent

§ 8-208:1 [Rev] Signature of authenticating trustee, registrar, or transfer agent—In general


U.C.C. § 8-209 [Rev] Issuer's Lien

§ 8-209:1 [Rev] Issuer's lien


U.C.C. § 8-210 [Rev] Overissue

§ 8-210:1 [Rev] Overissue—In general

PART 3 TRANSFER OF CERTIFICATED AND UNCERTIFICATED SECURITIES

U.C.C. § 8-301 [Rev] Delivery

§ 8-301:1 [Rev] “Delivery”—In general

§ 8-301:2 [Rev] Delivery of certificated security by actual possession or possession of agent

§ 8-301:3 [Rev] Delivery of certificated security by possession of securities intermediary; relationship between direct and indirect holding system rules

§ 8-301:4 [Rev] Delivery of uncertificated securities—In general

§ 8-301:5 [Rev] Delivery of uncertificated securities via third party

U.C.C. § 8-302 [Rev] Rights of Purchaser

§ 8-302:1 [Rev] Rights of purchaser—Shelter rule

§ 8-302:2 [Rev] Relationship to other law

§ 8-302:3 [Rev] Changes made by 1994 revision

U.C.C. § 8-303 [Rev] Protected Purchaser

§ 8-303:1 [Rev] Protected purchaser—In general

§ 8-303:2 [Rev] Value

§ 8-303:3 [Rev] Notice of adverse claim—Definition of adverse claim

§ 8-303:4 [Rev] Notice of one adverse claim disqualifies purchaser from protection against another adverse claim

§ 8-303:5 [Rev] Notice of adverse claims defined elsewhere

§ 8-303:6 [Rev] Control—Certificated securities

§ 8-303:7 [Rev] —Uncertificated securities

§ 8-303:8 [Rev] Protected purchaser rules not applicable to indirect holding system

clii
### Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-303:9</td>
<td>1994 changes—Terminology and organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-303:10</td>
<td>“Good faith”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 8-304</td>
<td>Indorsement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-304:1</td>
<td>Indorsement—In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-304:2</td>
<td>Special and blank indorsements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-304:3</td>
<td>Partial indorsements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-304:4</td>
<td>Effect of indorsement without delivery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-304:5</td>
<td>Effect of delivery without indorsement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-304:6</td>
<td>Indorsement of bearer certificate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-304:7</td>
<td>Limitation of indorser’s obligation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 8-305</td>
<td>Instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-305:1</td>
<td>Instructions—In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-305:2</td>
<td>Effect of origination of instruction without registration of transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-305:3</td>
<td>Completion of incomplete instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-305:4</td>
<td>Limitation of obligation of originator of instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 8-306</td>
<td>Effect of Guaranteeing Signature, Indorsement, or Instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-306:1</td>
<td>Signature guarantee—In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-306:2</td>
<td>Warranty that signature was genuine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-306:3</td>
<td>Warranty that the signer was an appropriate person or authorized agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-306:4</td>
<td>Warranty that the signer has capacity to sign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-306:5</td>
<td>Guarantor does not warrant rightfulness of transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-306:6</td>
<td>Guaranty of signature of originator of instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-306:7</td>
<td>Signature guaranty on redemption directions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-306:8</td>
<td>Guaranty of indorsement or instruction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-306:9</td>
<td>Who may enforce signature guaranty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 8-307</td>
<td>Purchaser’s Right to Requisites for Registration of Transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-307:1</td>
<td>Purchaser’s right to requisites for transfer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PART 4 REGISTRATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 8-401</td>
<td>Duty of Issuer to Register Transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-401:1</td>
<td>Overview of 1994 changes to Part 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-401:2</td>
<td>—1994 changes concerning transaction statements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-401:3</td>
<td>—1994 changes concerning registered pledges</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-401:4</td>
<td>Issuer’s duty to register transfer—In general</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 8-401:5 [Rev] —1994 changes
U.C.C. § 8-402 [Rev] Assurance that Indorsement or Instruction is Effective
§ 8-402:1 [Rev] Assurances that indorsement or instruction is effective—In general
§ 8-402:2 [Rev] —1994 changes
U.C.C. § 8-403 [Rev] Demand that Issuer Not Register Transfer
§ 8-403:1 [Rev] Demand that issuer not register transfer—In general
§ 8-403:2 [Rev] Stop transfer practice under old Article 8
§ 8-403:3 [Rev] Impact on stop transfer practice of 1994 change in standard for wrongful transfer liability
§ 8-403:4 [Rev] Demand that issuer not register transfer under 1994 revision
§ 8-403:5 [Rev] Stop transfer practice under 1994 revision
§ 8-403:6 [Rev] Relationship between “stop transfer” practice and issuer’s liability for transfer over ineffective indorsement or instruction
U.C.C. § 8-404 [Rev] Wrongful Registration
§ 8-404:1 [Rev] Issuer’s liability for wrongful transfer—In general
§ 8-404:2 [Rev] Transfer pursuant to ineffective indorsement or instruction
§ 8-404:3 [Rev] Transfer after registered owner has made demand that issuer not register transfer
§ 8-404:4 [Rev] Transfer despite injunction
§ 8-404:5 [Rev] Transfer by issuer acting in collusion with wrongdoer
§ 8-404:6 [Rev] Issuer’s liability not based on notice of adverse claims; Changes from prior law
U.C.C. § 8-405 [Rev] Replacement of Lost, Destroyed, or Wrongfully Taken Security Certificate
§ 8-405:1 [Rev] Replacement of certificates—In general
§ 8-405:2 [Rev] —1994 changes
U.C.C. § 8-406 [Rev] Obligation to Notify Issuer of Lost, Destroyed, or Wrongfully Taken Security Certificate
§ 8-406:1 [Rev] Obligation to notify issuer of loss of certificate—In general
§ 8-406:2 [Rev] —1994 changes
U.C.C. § 8-407 [Rev] Authenticating Trustee, Transfer Agent, and Registrar
§ 8-407:1 [Rev] Transfer agents—In general
PART 5 SECURITY ENTITLEMENTS

U.C.C. § 8-501 [Rev] Securities Account; Acquisition of Security Entitlement from Securities Intermediary

- Overview of Part 5
- Securities account—in general
- Deposit accounts not covered
- Brokerage asset management accounts
- Mutual fund accounts not covered
- Trust accounts not covered
- Acquisition of security entitlement—in general
- Confirmation not precondition to property interest
- Entitlement holder’s property interest does not depend on whether or when intermediary acquires its interest
- Limited circumstances in which customer has direct interest in financial asset rather than security entitlement
- Issuance of security is not establishment of a security entitlement

U.C.C. § 8-502 [Rev] Assertion of Adverse Claim Against Entitlement Holder

- Assertion of adverse claim against entitlement holder—in general
- Value
- Notice of adverse claim
- Notice of one adverse claim does not disqualify an entitlement holder from protection against another adverse claim
- Nature of adverse claims in the indirect holding system


- Entitlement holders’ property interest—in general
- Financial assets held by intermediary not subject to claims of intermediary’s own general creditors
- Entitlement holders’ claim extends to all units of security held by intermediary
§ 8-503:4 [Rev] Entitlement holders' pro rata property interest
§ 8-503:5 [Rev] Enforcement of entitlement holders' property interest—In general
§ 8-503:6 [Rev] Enforcement of entitlement holders' property interest against intermediary
§ 8-503:7 [Rev] Enforcement of entitlement holders' property interest against purchaser of financial asset from intermediary
§ 8-503:8 [Rev] Relationship between subsections 8-503(d) and (e)
§ 8-503:9 [Rev] Purchasers against whom entitlement holders' property interest may not be asserted
§ 8-503:10 [Rev] Collusion standard
§ 8-503:11 [Rev] Relationship between subsection 8-503(e) and other adverse claim cut-off rules
§ 8-503:12 [Rev] Action by intermediary's liquidator or action by entitlement holder

§ 8-504:1 [Rev] Securities intermediary's duties under Part 5—In general
§ 8-504:2 [Rev] Enforcement of intermediary's duties under Part 5
§ 8-504:3 [Rev] Duty of intermediary to maintain financial asset
§ 8-504:4 [Rev] When intermediary must obtain financial asset
§ 8-504:5 [Rev] Form of intermediary's holding; “Street name”
§ 8-504:6 [Rev] Intermediary prohibited from encumbering assets needed to satisfy entitlement holders' claims
§ 8-504:7 [Rev] “Agreement/due care” standard for performance of intermediary's duty to maintain assets
§ 8-504:8 [Rev] Duty to maintain assets does not apply to clearing corporation that is obligor of options or similar instruments

U.C.C. § 8-505 [Rev] Duty of Securities Intermediary With Respect to Payments and Distributions
§ 8-505:1 [Rev] Securities intermediary's duty with respect to payments and distributions—In general
§ 8-505:2 [Rev] Duty to take action to obtain payments or distributions
### TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-505:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>“Agreement/due care” standard applicable to duty to obtain payments and distributions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-505:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Obligation of intermediary in respect of payments and distributions received</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 8-506 [Rev]</td>
<td>Duty of Securities Intermediary to Exercise Rights as Directed by Entitlement Holder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-506:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Securities intermediary's duty to exercise rights—In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-506:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Entitlement holder may confer discretionary authority on another</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-506:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Relationship to federal securities regulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-506:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>“Agreement/due care” standard applicable to duty to exercise rights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 8-507 [Rev]</td>
<td>Duty of Securities Intermediary to Comply With Entitlement Order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-507:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Securities intermediary's duty to comply with entitlement orders—In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-507:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Appropriate person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-507:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Reasonable opportunity to assure genuineness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-507:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Distinction between custodial duties of securities intermediary and duties of broker with respect to trading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-507:5 [Rev]</td>
<td>“Agreement/due care” standard applicable to duty to comply with entitlement order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-507:6 [Rev]</td>
<td>Securities intermediary's liability to entitlement holder for wrongful transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 8-508 [Rev]</td>
<td>Duty of Securities Intermediary to Change Entitlement Holder's Position to Other Form of Security Holding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-508:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Securities intermediary's duty to convert security entitlement to alternative form of holding—In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-508:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>“Agreement/due care” standard applicable to duty to convert security entitlement to alternative form of holding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U.C.C. § 8-509 [Rev]</td>
<td>Specification of Duties of Securities Intermediary by Other Statute or Regulation; Manner of Performance of Duties of Securities Intermediary and Exercise of Rights of Entitlement Holder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-509:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 8-509:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Compliance with regulation satisfies Article 8 duty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 clvii
§ 8-509:3 [Rev] Duties and rights to be exercised in a commercially reasonable manner

§ 8-509:4 [Rev] Other agreements

§ 8-509:5 [Rev] Securities intermediary is not required to take prohibited action

§ 8-509:6 [Rev] Caution in interpretation of section 8-509

U.C.C. § 8-510 [Rev] Rights of Purchaser of Security Entitlement from Entitlement Holder

§ 8-510:1 [Rev] In general

§ 8-510:2 [Rev] Investor who acquires interest in an ordinary transaction in the indirect holding system is not described as a purchaser of a security entitlement from an entitlement holder

§ 8-510:3 [Rev] When adverse claim may not be asserted against purchaser of security entitlement from entitlement holder

§ 8-510:4 [Rev] “Shelter rule” for purchaser of security entitlement

§ 8-510:5 [Rev] Priority among purchasers of interests in security entitlement from entitlement holder

U.C.C. § 8-511 [Rev] Priority Among Security Interests and Entitlement Holders

§ 8-511:1 [Rev] Priority among security interests and entitlement holders claims—In general

§ 8-511:2 [Rev] Subordination of noncontrol security interests

§ 8-511:3 [Rev] Priority of control security interests

§ 8-511:4 [Rev] Relationship between sections 8-511 and 8-503

§ 8-511:5 [Rev] Security interests granted by clearing corporations

PART 6 TRANSITION PROVISIONS FOR REVISED ARTICLE 8

U.C.C. § 8-601 [Rev] Effective Date

§ 8-601:1 [Rev] Part 6—In general

§ 8-601:2 [Rev] Effective date

U.C.C. § 8-602 [Rev] Repeals

§ 8-602:1 [Rev] Repeals

§ 8-602:2 [Rev] Repeal of Uniform Act for the simplification of fiduciary security transfers—In general

§ 8-602:3 [Rev] Protection of transferee from fiduciary

§ 8-602:4 [Rev] Comparison of Fiduciary Security Transfer Act with Revised Article 8—FSTA section 1
ARTICLE 9 SECURED TRANSACTIONS

PART 1 SHORT TITLE, APPLICABILITY AND DEFINITIONS

Sec. 9-101 Short Title
§ 9-101:1 Organizational overview

Sec. 9-102 Policy and Subject Matter of Article
§ 9-102:1 Scope of Article 9
§ 9-102:2 Forms of secured transactions
§ 9-102:3 Title retention contracts, leases, and consignments—In general
§ 9-102:4 Title retention contracts, leases and consignments—Leases
§ 9-102:5 —Consignments
§ 9-102:6 Types of collateral covered

Sec. 9-103 Perfection of Security Interests in Multiple State Transactions
§ 9-103:1 Overview
§ 9-103:2 Documents, instruments, and ordinary goods
§ 9-103:3 Documents, instruments and ordinary goods—Last-event test
§ 9-103:4 —30-day rule
§ 9-103:5 —Four-month rule
§ 9-103:6 Goods covered by certificates of title
§ 9-103:7 —Coverage in new jurisdiction but not in former jurisdiction
§ 9-103:8 —Protection of nonmerchant buyer

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 clix
§ 9-103:9 Accounts, general intangibles, and mobile goods
§ 9-103:10 Chattel paper
§ 9-103:11 Minerals
§ 9-103:12 Priorities in multiple state transactions

Sec. 9-103 [1994] Perfection of Security Interests in Multiple State Transactions


Sec. 9-104 Transactions Excluded from Article
§ 9-104:1 In general
§ 9-104:2 Security interests under federal statutes
§ 9-104:3 Landlord's liens
§ 9-104:4 Artisan's liens
§ 9-104:5 Wage assignments
§ 9-104:6 Governmental transfers
§ 9-104:7 Nonfinancing account or chattel paper transfer
§ 9-104:8 Transfers of insurance policies
§ 9-104:9 Rights represented by judgments
§ 9-104:10 Rights of set-off
§ 9-104:11 Real estate
§ 9-104:12 Transfers of tort claims
§ 9-104:13 Security interests in deposit accounts

Sec. 9-105 Definitions and Index of Definitions
§ 9-105:1 In general
§ 9-105:2 Account debtor
§ 9-105:3 Chattel paper
§ 9-105:4 Collateral
§ 9-105:5 Debtor
§ 9-105:6 Deposit account
§ 9-105:7 Document
§ 9-105:8 Encumbrance
§ 9-105:9 Goods
§ 9-105:10 Instruments
§ 9-105:11 Mortgage
§ 9-105:12 Advance made pursuant to commitment
§ 9-105:13 Security agreement
§ 9-105:14 Secured party
§ 9-105:15 Transmitting utility
§ 9-105:16 Definitional indices

Sec. 9-105 [1994] Definitions and Index of Definitions

Sec. 9-106 Definitions: “Account”; “General Intangibles”

clx
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-106:1</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-106:2</td>
<td>Accounts and contract rights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-106:3</td>
<td>General intangibles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-107</td>
<td>Definitions: “Purchase Money Security Interest”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-107:1</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-107:2</td>
<td>Need for present value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-107:3</td>
<td>Acquisition of rights in or use of collateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-107:4</td>
<td>Actual use of value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-107:5</td>
<td>Problem of consolidation or refinancing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-107:6</td>
<td>Impact of fitting within PMSI definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-108</td>
<td>When After-Acquired Collateral Not Security for Antecedent Debt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-108:1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-108:2</td>
<td>Antecedency and after-acquired collateral—Section 9-108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-108:3</td>
<td>Bankruptcy Code section 547</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-109</td>
<td>Classification of Goods; “Consumer Goods”; “Equipment”; “Farm Products”; “Inventory”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-109:1</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-109:2</td>
<td>Consumer goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-109:3</td>
<td>Equipment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-109:4</td>
<td>Farm products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-109:5</td>
<td>Inventory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-110</td>
<td>Sufficiency of Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-110:1</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-110:2</td>
<td>Security agreement versus financing statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-110:3</td>
<td>Particular description problems—Permissible breadth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-110:4</td>
<td>——Statute of frauds and parol evidence rules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-110:5</td>
<td>——Location of collateral and description of real estate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-110:6</td>
<td>——After-acquired property and proceeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-111</td>
<td>Applicability of Bulk Transfer Laws</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-111:1</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-112</td>
<td>Where Collateral Is Not Owned by Debtor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-112:1</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-112:2</td>
<td>Nondebtor owner rights—Right to any surplus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-112:3</td>
<td>——Rights under section 9-208 to notice and to recover losses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 9-112:4 — Rights relative to strict foreclosure
§ 9-112:5 — Redemption rights
§ 9-112:6 Right to proceed against the noncomplying secured party
Sec. 9-113 Security Interests Arising Under Article on Sales or Under Article on Leases
§ 9-113:1 In general
§ 9-113:2 Interests that arise solely under Article 2
§ 9-113:3 Effect of debtor’s possession
§ 9-113:4 Priority matters
Sec. 9-114 Consignment
§ 9-114:1 In general
§ 9-114:2 Basic Article 2 rules
§ 9-114:3 Articles 2 and 9—Section 9-408
§ 9-114:4 — Section 9-114
§ 9-114:5 Gaps in the Code scheme
Sec. 9-115 [1994] Investment Property
§ 9-115:3 [1994] Investment property—In general
§ 9-115:4 [1994] Securities as investment property collateral; treatment of close corporation stock, partnership interests, and mutual fund shares
§ 9-115:6 [1994] Securities accounts as investment property collateral
§ 9-115:7 [1994] Control—In general
§ 9-115:8 [1994] Control of certificated securities
§ 9-115:9 [1994] Control of uncertificated securities
§ 9-115:10 [1994] Control of security entitlements and securities accounts
§ 9-115:11 [1994] Attachment of security interests in investment property; Description of collateral

clxii
**PART 2 VALIDITY OF SECURITY AGREEMENT AND RIGHTS OF PARTIES THERETO**

**Sec. 9-201** General Validity of Security Agreement

§ 9-201:1 In general

§ 9-201:2 Security agreement as a contractual base

**Sec. 9-202** Title to Collateral Immaterial

§ 9-202:1 Diminution of importance of title

§ 9-202:2 Continued importance of title

**Sec. 9-203** Attachment and Enforceability of Security Interest; Proceeds; Formal Requisites

§ 9-203:1 Differences between 1962 and 1972 Code

§ 9-203:2 Exceptions to the formal requisites—Security interests arising under other articles

§ 9-203:3 Enforceability and attachment

§ 9-203:4 Attachment and enforceability by possession

§ 9-203:5 Need for signed security agreement

§ 9-203:6 Description of collateral

§ 9-203:7 —Permissible breadth

§ 9-203:8 —Statute of frauds and parol evidence issues

§ 9-203:9 —Location of collateral and real estate

§ 9-203:10 —After-acquired property and proceeds

§ 9-203:11 Requirement that value be given

§ 9-203:12 Requirement that debtor have rights in collateral

§ 9-203:13 Proceeds and right to proceeds

§ 9-203:14 Other statutory enactment

**Sec. 9-203 [1994]** Attachment and Enforceability of Security Interest; Proceeds; Formal Requisites


**Sec. 9-204** After-Acquired Property; Future Advances

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 9-204:1 In general
§ 9-204:2 Basic differences between 1962 and 1972 Codes
§ 9-204:3 After-acquired property clauses—Crops and consumer goods
§ 9-204:4 —Under Bankruptcy Code sections 547 and 552
§ 9-204:5 Future advance clauses: Same class rule, extensions and renewals and other limitations

Sec. 9-205 Use or Disposition of Collateral Without Accounting Permissible
§ 9-205:1 In general

Sec. 9-206 Agreement Not to Assert Defenses Against Assignee; Modification of Sales Warranties Where Security Agreement Exists
§ 9-206:1 Position of assignee
§ 9-206:2 Rules of section 9-206
§ 9-206:3 Waiver of defense clause
§ 9-206:4 Consumer goods and FTC rules

Sec. 9-207 Rights and Duties When Collateral Is in Secured Party’s Possession
§ 9-207:1 In general
§ 9-207:2 Standard of reasonable care
§ 9-207:3 —Different types of collateral

Sec. 9-208 Request for Statement of Account or List of Collateral
§ 9-208:1 In general
§ 9-208:2 Pitfalls and unanswered questions

Volume 9

PART 3 RIGHTS OF THIRD PARTIES: PERFECTED AND UNPERFECTED SECURITY INTERESTS; RULES OF PRIORITY

Sec. 9-301 Persons Who Take Priority Over Unperfected Security Interests; Rights of “Lien Creditor”
§ 9-301:1 In general
§ 9-301:2 Unperfected security interests
§ 9-301:3 —Subordination to those entitled to priority under section 9-312
§ 9-301:4 —Subordination to lien creditors
§ 9-301:5 — —Exception
§ 9-301:6 Bankruptcy considerations
§ 9-301:7 Subordination to certain purchasers
§ 9-301:8 Priority between future advance and lien creditor; Federal tax lien
### Table of Contents

**Sec. 9-301 [1994] Persons Who Take Priority Over Unperfected Security Interests; Rights of “Lien Creditor.”**


**Sec. 9-302 When Filing Is Required to Perfect Security Interest; Security Interests to Which Filing Provisions of This Article Do Not Apply**

§ 9-302:1 In general
§ 9-302:2 Filing a financing statement to perfect
§ 9-302:3 Perfection by possession
§ 9-302:4 Temporary perfection
§ 9-302:5 Assignment of beneficial interest in trust or decedent’s estate
§ 9-302:6 Purchase money security interest in consumer goods
§ 9-302:7 — Fixtures which are also consumer goods
§ 9-302:8 — Motor vehicles required to be registered
§ 9-302:9 — Farm equipment
§ 9-302:10 Assignment of accounts
§ 9-302:11 Other security interests
§ 9-302:12 Assignment for the benefit of creditors
§ 9-302:13 Assignment of perfected security interests
§ 9-302:14 When financing statements are neither necessary nor effective
§ 9-302:15 Consequences of compliance with a statute or treaty under subsection 9-302(3)
§ 9-302:16 The 1962 Code and subsections 9-302(3) and 9-302(4)

**Sec. 9-302 [1994] When Filing is Required to Perfect Security Interest; Security Interests to Which Filing Provisions of This Article Do Not Apply**


**Sec. 9-303 When Security Interest Is Perfected; Continuity of Perfection**

§ 9-303:1 In general
§ 9-303:2 Continuity of perfection

**Sec. 9-303 [1994] When Security Interest Is Perfected; Continuity of Perfection**


**Sec. 9-304 Perfection of Security Interest in Instruments, Documents, and Goods Covered by Documents; Perfection by Permissive Filing;**
Temporary Perfection Without Filing or Transfer of Possession

§ 9-304:1 Introduction; Special rules on perfection
§ 9-304:2 Chattel paper
§ 9-304:3 Negotiable documents
§ 9-304:4 Money or instruments
§ 9-304:5 Goods in hands of third party; Negotiable document of title
§ 9-304:6 Goods in possession of third party other than under negotiable document
§ 9-304:7 Temporary perfection without possession or filing under subsection 9-304(4)
§ 9-304:8 Temporary continuation of perfection under subsection 9-304(5)

Sec. 9-304 [1994] Perfection of Security Interest in Instruments, Documents, Proceeds of a Written Letter of Credit, and Goods Covered by Documents; Perfection by Permissive Filing; Temporary Perfection Without Filing or Transfer of Possession


Sec. 9-305 When Possession by Secured Party Perfects Security Interest Without Filing

§ 9-305:1 Introduction; Perfection by possession
§ 9-305:2 Collateral in which a security interest can be perfected by possession
§ 9-305:3 Possession
§ 9-305:4 Bailee with notification of secured party’s interest
§ 9-305:5 When perfection by possession begins and ends


Sec. 9-306 “Proceeds”; Secured Party’s Rights on Disposition of Collateral

§ 9-306:1 Proceeds defined
§ 9-306:2 Continuity of security interest in collateral
§ 9-306:3 Continuity of security interest in proceeds
§ 9-306:4 Continuous perfection of security interest in proceeds
§ 9-306:5 Proceeds in insolvency proceedings
§ 9-306:6 Returned and repossessed goods: Introduction
§ 9-306:7 —Inventory financier
§ 9-306:8 —Chattel paper financer
§ 9-306:9 —Accounts financer
§ 9-306:10 —Perfection as against purchasers of the collateral and creditors of the transferor
Sec. 9-306 [1994] “Proceeds”; Secured Party’s Rights on Disposition of Collateral
Sec. 9-307 Protection of Buyers of Goods
§ 9-307:1 In general
§ 9-307:2 Protection for the buyer in ordinary course of business
§ 9-307:3 Farm products buyer; The Food Security Act
§ 9-307:4 Consumer goods buyer
§ 9-307:5 Farm equipment buyers
§ 9-307:6 Priority between the future advance and the buyer of collateral
Sec. 9-308 Purchase of Chattel Paper and Instruments
§ 9-308:1 In general
§ 9-308:2 Chattel paper
§ 9-308:3 Instruments
§ 9-308:4 Chattel paper and instruments as mere proceeds
§ 9-308:5 1962 Code
Sec. 9-309 Protection of Purchasers of Instruments, Documents and Securities
§ 9-309:1 In general
Sec. 9-309 [1994] Protection of Purchasers of Instruments, Documents and Securities
Sec. 9-310 Priority of Certain Liens Arising by Operation of Law
§ 9-310:1 Introduction; The artisan’s lien
§ 9-310:2 Rule of priority
Sec. 9-311 Alienability of Debtor’s Rights: Judicial Process
§ 9-311:1 Alienability in general
Sec. 9-312 Priorities Among Conflicting Security Interests in the Same Collateral
§ 9-312:1 In general
§ 9-312:2 Code priority rules
§ 9-312:3 Security interest in crops
§ 9-312:4 Purchase money security interest in inventory

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 clxvii
§ 9-312:5 Purchase money security interest in collateral other than inventory
§ 9-312:6 Conflicting security interests in the same collateral
§ 9-312:7 Proceeds
§ 9-312:8 Future advances
Sec. 9-312 [1994] Priorities Among Conflicting Security Interests in the Same Collateral
Sec. 9-313 Priority of Security Interests in Fixtures
§ 9-313:1 In general
§ 9-313:2 Code rules and nonrules
§ 9-313:3 Fixtures under the 1962 Code
§ 9-313:4 Fixtures under the 1972 Code
§ 9-313:5 —Specialized priority rules
§ 9-313:6 ——Construction mortgages
§ 9-313:7 Default, the right to remove, and some unresolved problems
Sec. 9-314 Accessions
§ 9-314:1 What constitutes an accession
§ 9-314:2 General rules
§ 9-314:3 Accession problems
Sec. 9-315 Priority When Goods Are Commingled or Processed
§ 9-315:1 In general
Sec. 9-316 Priority Subject to Subordination
§ 9-316:1 Subordination agreements in general
Sec. 9-317 Secured Party Not Obligated on Contract of Debtor
§ 9-317:1 In general
Sec. 9-318 Defenses Against Assignee; Modification of Contract After Notification of Assignment; Term Prohibiting Assignment Ineffective; Identification and Proof of Assignment
§ 9-318:1 In general
§ 9-318:2 Claims and defenses
§ 9-318:3 Importance of notification

PART 4 FILING
Sec. 9-401 Place of Filing; Erroneous Filing; Removal of Collateral
§ 9-401:1 Overview
§ 9-401:2 Where to file and search—In general
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-401:3</td>
<td>First alternative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-401:4</td>
<td>Second alternative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-401:5</td>
<td>Third alternative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-401:6</td>
<td>Special filing rules for transmitting utilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-401:7</td>
<td>Time when collateral is characterized for filing purposes; Change of circumstances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-401:8</td>
<td>Change in facts controlling original filing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-401:9</td>
<td>Effect of filing made in wrong place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-402</td>
<td>Formal Requisites of Financing Statement; Amendments; Mortgage as Financing Statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-402:1</td>
<td>What to file—UCC forms UCC-1; UCC-2; UCC-3; Amendment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-402:2</td>
<td>Security agreement as financing statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-402:3</td>
<td>Debtor's name—In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-402:4</td>
<td>Individuals; Sole proprietorships; Trade names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-402:5</td>
<td>Partnerships, corporations and other “organizations”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-402:6</td>
<td>Multiple debtors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-402:7</td>
<td>Debtor's change of name after filing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-402:8</td>
<td>Secured party's name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-402:9</td>
<td>Multiple secured parties; Participation agreements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-402:10</td>
<td>Changes in the name or identity of secured party after filing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-402:11</td>
<td>Address requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-402:12</td>
<td>Signature requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-402:13</td>
<td>Description of collateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-402:14</td>
<td>Minor errors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-403</td>
<td>What Constitutes Filing; Duration of Filing; Effect of Lapsed Filing; Duties of Filing Officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-403:1</td>
<td>What constitutes filing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-403:2</td>
<td>Duration of filing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-403:3</td>
<td>Continuation statements; Amendments and financing statements distinguished</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-403:4</td>
<td>Time to file continuation statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-403:5</td>
<td>Effect of bankruptcy on duration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-403:6</td>
<td>Effect of lapse of filing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-404</td>
<td>Termination Statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-404:1</td>
<td>Methods of termination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-404:2</td>
<td>Effect of failure to terminate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-404:3</td>
<td>Mandatory termination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-405</td>
<td>Assignment of Security Interest; Duties of Filing Officer; Fees</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 clxxi
§ 9-405:1 Assignment of security interest—Relationship between section 9-405 and general principles of assignment law
§ 9-405:2 Filing assignments of security interests
§ 9-405:3 Effect of failure to file statement of assignment
Sec. 9-406 Release of Collateral; Duties of Filing Officer; Fees
§ 9-406:1 Release
Sec. 9-407 Information From Filing Officer
§ 9-407:1 In general
Sec. 9-408 Financing Statements Covering Consigned or Leased Goods
§ 9-408:1 Precautionary filings for consignments and leases
§ 9-408:2 Consignments
§ 9-408:3 Leases

PART 5 DEFAULT
Sec. 9-501 Default; Procedure When Security Agreement Covers Both Real and Personal Property
§ 9-501:1 Overview
§ 9-501:2 Default
§ 9-501:3 Acceleration clauses and default
§ 9-501:4 Acceleration and insecurity clauses
§ 9-501:5 Rights and remedies of the secured party
§ 9-501:6 Duties of the secured party after default
§ 9-501:7 Election of remedies by secured party
§ 9-501:8 Debtor's rights and remedies after default
§ 9-501:9 Postdefault waiver or variation of debtor's rights and secured parties' duties
§ 9-501:10 Secured party's rights as to both real and personal property
§ 9-501:11 Effect of foreclosure by judicial procedure
Sec. 9-502 Collection Rights of Secured Party
§ 9-502:1 In general
§ 9-502:2 Secured party's right to receive payment directly from account debtor on default or otherwise
Secured party's collection obligations
§ 9-502:3 Secured party's collection obligations
§ 9-502:4 Right to surplus and liability for deficiency
§ 9-502:5 Distribution of proceeds
Sec. 9-503 Secured Party's Right to Take Possession After Default
§ 9-503:1 Secured party's right to repossess
§ 9-503:2 Notice before repossession

clx
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 9-503:3 Self-help repossession
§ 9-503:4 Alternatives to self-help repossession
§ 9-503:5 Secured party’s rights to require debtor to assemble collateral
§ 9-503:6 Secured party’s right to dispose of collateral without removal
§ 9-503:7 Effect of law other than the Code; Bankruptcy and consumer protection statutes

Sec. 9-504 Secured Party’s Right to Dispose of Collateral After Default; Effect of Disposition
§ 9-504:1 In general
§ 9-504:2 Rights of secured party
§ 9-504:3 Order of disposition of proceeds
§ 9-504:4 Disposition of collateral—Commercially reasonable standard
§ 9-504:5 —Advertisement
§ 9-504:6 —Holding collateral prior to disposition
§ 9-504:7 —Notice to debtor
§ 9-504:8 Notice to secured parties
§ 9-504:9 —Requirement of reasonable notification
§ 9-504:10 —Public sale versus private sale
§ 9-504:11 Effect of secured party’s disposition of collateral
§ 9-504:12 Rights of person liable to a secured party under guarantee, indorsement, repurchase agreement or the like

Sec. 9-505 Compulsory Disposition of Collateral; Acceptance of the Collateral as Discharge of Obligation
§ 9-505:1 In general
§ 9-505:2 Compulsory disposition; Consumer goods and the sixty-percent rule
§ 9-505:3 Renunciation or modification of compulsory disposition
§ 9-505:4 Secured party’s proposal of strict foreclosure
§ 9-505:5 Notice to debtor of proposed strict foreclosure; Renunciation or modification
§ 9-505:6 Notice to other secured parties of proposed strict foreclosure
§ 9-505:7 Objection to strict foreclosure by debtor and secured parties
§ 9-505:8 Acceptance of part collateral as satisfaction of the obligation or acceptance of all collateral as partial satisfaction of the obligation
§ 9-505:9 Involuntary strict foreclosure
§ 9-505:10 Effect of strict foreclosure on subordinate security interests and other liens

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
clixxi
Sec. 9-506 Debtor's Right to Redeem Collateral
§ 9-506:1 In general
§ 9-506:2 Debtor's right of redemption
§ 9-506:3 Redemption rights of secured parties
§ 9-506:4 Period of redemption
§ 9-506:5 Waiver of the right of redemption
§ 9-506:6 Tendering fulfillment
§ 9-506:7 Redemption under the Bankruptcy Code

Sec. 9-507 Secured Party's Liability for Failure to Comply with This Part
§ 9-507:1 In general
§ 9-507:2 Injunctive relief
§ 9-507:3 Damages for improper disposition
§ 9-507:4 Redemption as an alternative to damages
§ 9-507:5 Who may impose liability on the secured party
§ 9-507:6 Remedies available to consumer
§ 9-507:7 Barring the secured party's claim for deficiency judgment
§ 9-507:8 Rules for the commercially reasonable sale
§ 9-507:9 Commercially reasonable methods of sale
§ 9-507:10 Advanced confirmation of disposition

The Article 9 Revision Process and Interpretation of Original Article 9

Volume 9A

ARTICLE 9 [REV] SECURED TRANSACTIONS

PART 1 [REV] GENERAL PROVISIONS

SUBPART 1 SHORT TITLE, DEFINITIONS, AND GENERAL CONCEPTS

Sec. 9-101 [Rev] Short Title
§ 9-101:1 [Rev] Organizational overview
§ 9-101:2 [Rev] National and local law
§ 9-101:3 [Rev] Overview of rules affecting collateral types
§ 9-101:4 [Rev] 2010 Amendments to Article 9

Sec. 9-102 [Rev] Definitions and Index of Definitions
§ 9-102:1 [Rev] In general
§ 9-102:2 [Rev] Miscellaneous definitions
§ 9-102:3 [Rev] Account

clxxi
### Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-102:5 [Rev]</td>
<td>Agricultural lien</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-102:6 [Rev]</td>
<td>Chattel paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-102:7 [Rev]</td>
<td>Debtor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-102:8 [Rev]</td>
<td>Deposit account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-102:10 [Rev]</td>
<td>Goods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-102:11 [Rev]</td>
<td>Instruments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-102:12 [Rev]</td>
<td>Investment property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-102:12.50 [Rev]</td>
<td>Payment intangibles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-102:13 [Rev]</td>
<td>Proceeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-102:14 [Rev]</td>
<td>Pursuant to commitment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-102:15 [Rev]</td>
<td>Security agreement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-102:16 [Rev]</td>
<td>Secured party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-102:17 [Rev]</td>
<td>Transmitting utility</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-102:19 [Rev]</td>
<td>The 2010 Amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-103 [Rev]</td>
<td>Purchase-Money Security Interest; Application of Payments; Burden of Establishing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-103:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-103:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Need for present value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-103:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Acquisition of rights in or use of collateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-103:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Actual use of value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-103:5 [Rev]</td>
<td>Problem of consolidation, refinancing, and the like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-103:6 [Rev]</td>
<td>Impact of fitting within PMSI definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-103:7 [Rev]</td>
<td>“Negative equity” and the Bankruptcy Code’s “hanging paragraph”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-104 [Rev]</td>
<td>Control of Deposit Account</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-104:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-104:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>The 2010 Amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-105 [Rev]</td>
<td>Control of Electronic Chattel Paper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-105:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-105:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>The 2010 Amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-106 [Rev]</td>
<td>Control of Investment Property</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-106:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-106:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Control of investment property; Changes from prior law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-107 [Rev]</td>
<td>Control of Letter-of-Credit Right</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-107:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-108 [Rev]</td>
<td>Sufficiency of Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-108:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Security agreement compared to financing statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-108:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Particular description problems</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SUBPART 2 APPLICABILITY OF ARTICLE

Sec. 9-109 [Rev] Scope
§ 9-109:1 [Rev] Scope of Article 9
§ 9-109:2 [Rev] Forms of secured transactions
§ 9-109:3 [Rev] Title retention contracts, leases, and consignments
§ 9-109:4 [Rev] Types of collateral covered
§ 9-109:5 [Rev] Excluded transactions in general
§ 9-109:6 [Rev] Security interests under federal statutes
§ 9-109:7 [Rev] Landlord's liens
§ 9-109:8 [Rev] Statutory liens
§ 9-109:10 [Rev] Governmental transfers
§ 9-109:11 [Rev] Nonfinancing account, chattel paper, and other transfers
§ 9-109:12 [Rev] Transfers of insurance
§ 9-109:13 [Rev] Rights represented by judgments
§ 9-109:15 [Rev] Real estate

Sec. 9-110 [Rev] Security Interests Arising Under Article 2 or 2A
§ 9-110:1 [Rev] What interests are included?
§ 9-110:2 [Rev] Relationship to revised Article 9

PART 2 [REV] EFFECTIVENESS OF SECURITY AGREEMENT; ATTACHMENT OF SECURITY INTEREST; RIGHTS OF PARTIES TO SECURITY AGREEMENT

SUBPART 1 EFFECTIVENESS AND ATTACHMENT

Sec. 9-201 [Rev] General Effectiveness of Security Agreement
§ 9-201:1 [Rev] In general
§ 9-201:2 [Rev] Security agreement as a contractual basis
§ 9-201:3 [Rev] Applicability of other law

Sec. 9-202 [Rev] Title to Collateral Immaterial
§ 9-202:1 [Rev] Diminution of importance of title
§ 9-202:2 [Rev] Continued importance of title

Sec. 9-203 [Rev] Attachment and Enforceability of Security Interest; Proceeds; Supporting Obligations; Formal Requisites
§ 9-203:1 [Rev] Evolution of section
§ 9-203:2 [Rev] Exceptions to formal requisites—Security interests arising under other articles; Agricultural liens
§ 9-203:3 [Rev] Enforceability and attachment
§ 9-203:4 [Rev] Attachment and enforceability by possession, delivery and control
§ 9-203:5 [Rev] Need for authenticated security agreement
§ 9-203:6 [Rev] Description of collateral
§ 9-203:7 [Rev] Permissible breadth
§ 9-203:8 [Rev] —Statute of frauds and parol evidence issues
§ 9-203:9 [Rev] —Location of collateral and real estate
§ 9-203:10 [Rev] After-acquired property and proceeds
§ 9-203:11 [Rev] Requirement that value be given
§ 9-203:12 [Rev] Requirement that debtor have rights in collateral
§ 9-203:13 [Rev] Proceeds and right to proceeds; Supporting obligations
§ 9-203:14 [Rev] Investment property
§ 9-203:15 [Rev] New debtor provisions
§ 9-203:16 [Rev] Mortgage follows debt
Sec. 9-204 [Rev] After-Acquired Property; Future Advances
§ 9-204:1 [Rev] In general
§ 9-204:2 [Rev] Basic differences between 1962 and 1972 Codes
§ 9-204:3 [Rev] After-acquired property clauses—Exceptions
§ 9-204:4 [Rev] Under Bankruptcy Code §§ 547 and 552
§ 9-204:5 [Rev] Future advance clauses: Same class rule; Extensions and renewals and other limitations
Sec. 9-205 [Rev] Use or Disposition of Collateral Permissible
§ 9-205:1 [Rev] In general
Sec. 9-206 [Rev] Security Interest Arising in Purchase or Delivery of Financial Asset
§ 9-206:1 [Rev] In general

SUBPART 2 RIGHTS AND DUTIES
Sec. 9-207 [Rev] Rights and Duties of Secured Party Having Possession or Control of Collateral
§ 9-207:1 [Rev] In general
§ 9-207:2 [Rev] Standard of reasonable care
§ 9-207:3 [Rev] Different types of collateral

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 clxxv
Sec. 9-208 [Rev] Additional Duties of Secured Party Having Control of Collateral
§ 9-208:1 [Rev] In general
Sec. 9-209 [Rev] Duties of Secured Party if Account Debtor has been Notified of Assignment
§ 9-209:1 [Rev] In general
Sec. 9-210 [Rev] Request for Accounting; Request Regarding List of Collateral or Statement of Account
§ 9-210:1 [Rev] In general
§ 9-210:2 [Rev] Pitfalls and unanswered questions

Volume 9B

PART 3 [REV] PERFECTION AND PRIORITY

SUBPART 1 LAW GOVERNING PERFECTION AND PRIORITY

Sec. 9-301 [Rev] Law Governing Perfection and Priority of Security Interests
§ 9-301:1 [Rev] Overview
§ 9-301:2 [Rev] General rule for tangible and intangible collateral
§ 9-301:4 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments
Sec. 9-302 [Rev] Law Governing Perfection and Priority of Agricultural Liens
§ 9-302:1 [Rev] In general
Sec. 9-303 [Rev] Law Governing Perfection and Priority of Security Interests in Goods Covered by a Certificate of Title
§ 9-303:2 [Rev] Coverage in new jurisdiction
Sec. 9-304 [Rev] Law Governing Perfection and Priority of Security Interests in Deposit Accounts
§ 9-304:1 [Rev] In general
Sec. 9-305 [Rev] Law Governing Perfection and Priority of Security Interests in Investment Property
§ 9-305:1 [Rev] In general
Sec. 9-306 [Rev] Law Governing Perfection and Priority of Security Interests in Letter-of-Credit Rights
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 9-306:1 [Rev]  In general
Sec. 9-307 [Rev]  Location of Debtor
§ 9-307:1 [Rev]  In general

SUBPART 2 PERFECTION

Sec. 9-308 [Rev]  When Security Interest or Agricultural Lien is Perfected; Continuity of Perfection
§ 9-308:1 [Rev]  In general
§ 9-308:2 [Rev]  Agricultural liens, supporting obligations, rights to payment and investment property
§ 9-308:3 [Rev]  Continuity of perfection
Sec. 9-309 [Rev]  Security Interest Perfected Upon Attachment
§ 9-309:1 [Rev]  In general
§ 9-309:2 [Rev]  Purchase-money security interest in consumer goods
§ 9-309:3 [Rev]  Assignment of accounts, payment intangibles, and health-care-insurance receivables
§ 9-309:4 [Rev]  Investment property
§ 9-309:5 [Rev]  Other security interests
§ 9-309:6 [Rev]  Sales of receivables
§ 9-309:7 [Rev]  Assignment for the benefit of creditors
§ 9-309:8 [Rev]  Assignment of a beneficial interest in decedent's estate

Sec. 9-310 [Rev]  When Filing Required to Perfect Security Interest or Agricultural Lien; Security Interests and Agricultural Liens to Which Filing Provisions Do Not Apply
§ 9-310:1 [Rev]  Filing a financing statement to perfect
§ 9-310:2 [Rev]  When a financing statement is not necessary
§ 9-310:3 [Rev]  Assignment of perfected security interests or agricultural liens

Sec. 9-311 [Rev]  Perfection of Security Interests in Property Subject to Certain Statutes, Regulations, and Treaties
§ 9-311:1 [Rev]  When financing statements are neither necessary nor effective
§ 9-311:2 [Rev]  Consequences of compliance with a statute or treaty
§ 9-311:3 [Rev]  The 2010 Amendments

Sec. 9-312 [Rev]  Perfection of Security Interests in Chattel Paper, Deposit Accounts, Documents, Goods Covered by Documents, Instruments,
Investment Property, Letter-of-Credit Rights, and Money; Perfection by Permissive Filing; Temporary Perfection Without Filing or Transfer of Possession

§ 9-312:1 [Rev] Introduction: Special rules on perfection
§ 9-312:2 [Rev] Chattel paper
§ 9-312:3 [Rev] Negotiable documents
§ 9-312:4 [Rev] Instruments
§ 9-312:5 [Rev] Money
§ 9-312:7 [Rev] Temporary perfection
§ 9-312:8 [Rev] Investment property
§ 9-312:9 [Rev] Deposit accounts and letter-of-credit rights

Sec. 9-313 [Rev] When Possession by or Delivery to Secured Party Perfects Security Interest Without Filing

§ 9-313:1 [Rev] Introduction: Perfection by possession or delivery
§ 9-313:2 [Rev] Collateral in which a security interest can be perfected by possession or delivery
§ 9-313:3 [Rev] Possession
§ 9-313:4 [Rev] Bailee with notification of secured party's interest
§ 9-313:5 [Rev] When perfection begins and ends

Sec. 9-314 [Rev] Perfection by Control
§ 9-314:1 [Rev] In general

Sec. 9-315 [Rev] Secured Party's Rights on Disposition of Collateral and in Proceeds
§ 9-315:1 [Rev] Continuity of security interest in collateral
§ 9-315:2 [Rev] Attachment of security interest to proceeds
§ 9-315:3 [Rev] Continuous perfection of security interest in proceeds
§ 9-315:4 [Rev] Proceeds in insolvency proceedings
§ 9-315:5 [Rev] Returned and repossessed goods

Sec. 9-316 [Rev] Effect of Change in Governing Law
§ 9-316:1 [Rev] General rule
§ 9-316:2 [Rev] Possessory security interests
§ 9-316:3 [Rev] Goods covered by certificates of title
§ 9-316:4 [Rev] Deposit accounts, letter-of-credit rights, investment property
§ 9-316:5 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments
TABLE OF CONTENTS

SUBPART 3 PRIORITY

Sec. 9-317 [Rev] Interests That Take Priority Over or Take Free of Security Interest or Agricultural Lien

§ 9-317:1 [Rev] In general
§ 9-317:2 [Rev] Unperfected security interests and agricultural liens
§ 9-317:3 [Rev] Bankruptcy considerations

Sec. 9-318 [Rev] No Interest Retained in Right to Payment that is Sold; Rights and Title of Seller of Account or Chattel Paper with Respect to Creditors and Purchasers

§ 9-318:1 [Rev] In general

Sec. 9-319 [Rev] Rights and Title of Consignee with Respect to Creditors and Purchasers

§ 9-319:1 [Rev] In general

Sec. 9-320 [Rev] Buyer of Goods

§ 9-320:1 [Rev] In general
§ 9-320:2 [Rev] Protection for the buyer in ordinary course of business
§ 9-320:3 [Rev] Farm products buyer; The Food Security Act
§ 9-320:4 [Rev] Consumer goods buyer
§ 9-320:5 [Rev] Buyers at wellhead or minehead; Buyers when secured party in possession

Sec. 9-321 [Rev] Licensee of General Intangible and Lessee of Goods in Ordinary Course of Business

§ 9-321:1 [Rev] In general

Sec. 9-322 [Rev] Priorities Among Conflicting Security Interests in and Agricultural Liens on Same Collateral

§ 9-322:1 [Rev] In general
§ 9-322:2 [Rev] Code priority rules
§ 9-322:3 [Rev] Conflicting security interests or agricultural liens in the same collateral
§ 9-322:4 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments

Sec. 9-323 [Rev] Future Advances

§ 9-323:1 [Rev] In general
§ 9-323:3 [Rev] Future advances: Lien creditor; Federal tax lien

Sec. 9-324 [Rev] Priority of Purchase-Money Security Interests

§ 9-324:1 [Rev] Purchase-money security interest in inventory
§ 9-324:2 [Rev] Purchase-money security interest in collateral other than inventory: In general
Sec. 9-325 [Rev] Priority of Security Interests in Transferred Collateral

§ 9-325:1 [Rev] In general

Sec. 9-326 [Rev] Priority of Security Interests Created by New Debtor

§ 9-326:1 [Rev] In general
§ 9-326:2 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments

Sec. 9-327 [Rev] Priority of Security Interests in Deposit Account

§ 9-327:1 [Rev] In general

Sec. 9-328 [Rev] Priority of Security Interests in Investment Property

§ 9-328:1 [Rev] In general
§ 9-328:2 [Rev] Relation to other law

Sec. 9-329 [Rev] Priority of Security Interests in Letter-of-Credit Right

§ 9-329:1 [Rev] In general

Sec. 9-330 [Rev] Priority of Purchaser of Chattel Paper or Instrument

§ 9-330:1 [Rev] In general
§ 9-330:2 [Rev] Chattel paper
§ 9-330:3 [Rev] Instruments
§ 9-330:4 [Rev] Chattel paper and instruments as mere proceeds
§ 9-330:5 [Rev] Priority in proceeds

Sec. 9-331 [Rev] Priority of Rights of Purchasers of Instruments, Documents, and Securities Under Other Articles; Priority of Interests in Financial Assets and Security Entitlements Under Article 8

§ 9-331:1 [Rev] In general

Sec. 9-332 [Rev] Transfer of Money; Transfer of Funds From Deposit Account

§ 9-332:1 [Rev] In general

Sec. 9-333 [Rev] Priority of Certain Liens Arising by Operation of Law

§ 9-333:1 [Rev] Introduction: The artisan's lien
§ 9-333:2 [Rev] Rule of priority

Sec. 9-334 [Rev] Priority of Security Interests in Fixtures and Crops

§ 9-334:1 [Rev] In general
§ 9-334:3 [Rev] Fixtures under the Code: Priority
Table of Contents

§ 9-334:4 [Rev] Default and the right to remove
§ 9-334:5 [Rev] Crops
Sec. 9-335 [Rev] Accessions
§ 9-335:1 [Rev] What constitutes an accession
§ 9-335:2 [Rev] General rules
§ 9-335:3 [Rev] Removal and other problems
Sec. 9-336 [Rev] Commingled Goods
§ 9-336:1 [Rev] In general
Sec. 9-337 [Rev] Priority of Security Interests in Goods Covered by Certificate of Title
§ 9-337:1 [Rev] In general
Sec. 9-338 [Rev] Priority of Security Interest or Agricultural Lien Perfected by Filed Financing Statement Providing Certain Incorrect Information
§ 9-338:1 [Rev] In general
Sec. 9-339 [Rev] Priority Subject to Subordination
§ 9-339:1 [Rev] Subordination agreements in general

Subpart 4 Rights of Bank

Sec. 9-340 [Rev] Effectiveness of Right of Recoupment or Set-Off Against Deposit Account
§ 9-340:1 [Rev] In general
Sec. 9-341 [Rev] Bank’s Rights and Duties With Respect to Deposit Account
§ 9-341:1 [Rev] In general
Sec. 9-342 [Rev] Bank’s Right To Refuse to Enter Into or Disclose Existence of Control Agreement
§ 9-342:1 [Rev] In general

Part 4 [Rev] Rights of Third Parties

Sec. 9-401 [Rev] Alienability of Debtor’s Rights
§ 9-401:1 [Rev] Alienability and limitations
Sec. 9-402 [Rev] Secured Party Not Obligated on Contract of Debtor or in Tort
§ 9-402:1 [Rev] In general
Sec. 9-403 [Rev] Agreement Not To Assert Defenses Against Assignee
§ 9-403:1 [Rev] Position of assignee
§ 9-403:2 [Rev] Rules of section
§ 9-403:3 [Rev] Conditions to asserting waiver of defense clause
§ 9-403:4 [Rev] Consumer rules
Sec. 9-404 [Rev] Rights Acquired by Assignee; Claims and Defenses Against Assignee

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 clxxxi
§ 9-404:1 [Rev] In general
Sec. 9-405 [Rev] Modification of Assigned Contract
§ 9-405:1 [Rev] In general
Sec. 9-406 [Rev] Discharge of Account Debtor; Notification of Assignment; Identification and Proof of Assignment; Restrictions on Assignment of Accounts, Chattel Paper, Payment Intangibles, and Promissory Notes Ineffective
§ 9-406:1 [Rev] Discharge of account debtor and assignment
§ 9-406:2 [Rev] Ineffectiveness of restrictions on assignment and adequacy of notice
§ 9-406:3 [Rev] Table of free alienability rules of §§ 9-406 and 9-408
Sec. 9-407 [Rev] Restrictions on Creation or Enforcement of Security Interest in Leasehold Interest or in Lessor’s Residual Interest
§ 9-407:1 [Rev] Ineffectiveness of restrictions on creation and enforcement of security interest
Sec. 9-408 [Rev] Restrictions on Assignment of Promissory Notes, Health-Care-Insurance Receivables, and Certain General Intangibles Ineffective
§ 9-408:1 [Rev] Ineffectiveness of restrictions on assignment
§ 9-408:2 [Rev] Effect of Sections 9-406 and 9-408 on rights in unincorporated business entities
§ 9-408:3 [Rev] Assignment of rights under structured settlements
§ 9-408:4 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments
Sec. 9-409 [Rev] Restrictions on Assignment of Letter-of-Credit Rights Ineffective
§ 9-409:1 [Rev] Ineffectiveness of restrictions

PART 5 [REV] FILING

SUBPART 1 FILING OFFICE; CONTENTS AND EFFECTIVENESS OF FINANCING STATEMENT

Sec. 9-501 [Rev] Filing Office
§ 9-501:3 [Rev] Special filing rules for real estate related collateral
§ 9-501:4 [Rev] Special filing rules for transmitting utilities
§ 9-501:5 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-502 [Rev]</td>
<td>Contents of Financing Statement; Record of Mortgage as Financing Statement; Time of Filing Financing Statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-502:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Special rules for real property-related filings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-502:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Information required by other sections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-503 [Rev]</td>
<td>Name of Debtor and Secured Party</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-503:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Debtor's name—In general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-503:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>—Registered organizations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-503:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>—Decedent's estates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-503:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>—Trusts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-503:5 [Rev]</td>
<td>—Individuals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-503:6 [Rev]</td>
<td>—Organizations other than registered organizations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-503:7 [Rev]</td>
<td>—Trade names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-503:8 [Rev]</td>
<td>Multiple debtors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-503:9 [Rev]</td>
<td>Secured party's name—Generally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-503:10 [Rev]</td>
<td>—Representative of one or more secured parties</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-503:11 [Rev]</td>
<td>The 2010 Amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-504 [Rev]</td>
<td>Indication of Collateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-504:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Indication of collateral—Generally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-504:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Safe harbor for indication of collateral by description of it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-504:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Safe harbor for indication of collateral by supergeneric description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-505 [Rev]</td>
<td>Filing and Compliance with Other Statutes and Treaties for Consignments, Leases, Other Bailments, and Other Transactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-505:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Precautionary filings—Generally</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-505:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>—Certificates of title and the like</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-506 [Rev]</td>
<td>Effect of Errors or Omissions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-506:2 [Rev]</td>
<td>Errors with respect to the debtor's name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-506:3 [Rev]</td>
<td>Special rule when there is a new debtor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-506:4 [Rev]</td>
<td>Errors not involving debtor's name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-506:5 [Rev]</td>
<td>The 2010 Amendments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. 9-507 [Rev]</td>
<td>Effect of Certain Events on Effectiveness of Financing Statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 9-507:1 [Rev]</td>
<td>Effectiveness of financing statement after disposition of collateral by debtor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 9-507:2 [Rev] Effectiveness of financing statement after change of debtor’s name
§ 9-507:3 [Rev] Effectiveness of financing statement after other changes
§ 9-507:4 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments
Sec. 9-508 [Rev] Effectiveness of Financing Statement if New Debtor Becomes Bound by Security Agreement
§ 9-508:1 [Rev] Effectiveness against new debtor of financing statement naming original debtor—Generally
§ 9-508:2 [Rev] Exceptions—New debtor in same jurisdiction
§ 9-508:3 [Rev] —New debtor in different jurisdiction
§ 9-508:4 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments
Sec. 9-509 [Rev] Persons Entitled to File a Record
§ 9-509:1 [Rev] Persons entitled to file financing statement or amendment adding collateral or debtor
§ 9-509:2 [Rev] Actual authorization by the debtor
§ 9-509:3 [Rev] Deemed authorization by debtor
§ 9-509:4 [Rev] Persons entitled to file other amendments
§ 9-509:5 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments
Sec. 9-510 [Rev] Effectiveness of Filed Record
§ 9-510:1 [Rev] Effectiveness of filed records—Generally
§ 9-510:2 [Rev] —Unauthorized record
§ 9-510:3 [Rev] —Record exceeding authorization
§ 9-510:4 [Rev] —Amendment not authorized by all secured parties
§ 9-510:5 [Rev] —Continuation statement filed outside six-month window
Sec. 9-511 [Rev] Secured Party of Record
§ 9-511:1 [Rev] Secured party of record—Generally
Sec. 9-512 [Rev] Amendment of Financing Statement
§ 9-512:1 [Rev] Amendments to financing statement—Generally
§ 9-512:2 [Rev] —Required procedure
§ 9-512:3 [Rev] —Effective date and expiration
§ 9-512:4 [Rev] —Ineffective
§ 9-512:5 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments
Sec. 9-513 [Rev] Termination Statement
§ 9-513:1 [Rev] Termination statements—Generally
§ 9-513:2 [Rev] —Who may file
§ 9-513:3 [Rev] Mandatory termination—Unauthorized financing statements
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 9-513:4 [Rev] —Consumer goods collateral
§ 9-513:5 [Rev] —Other collateral
Sec. 9-514 [Rev] Assignment of Powers of Secured Party of Record
§ 9-514:1 [Rev] Assignments—Generally
§ 9-514:2 [Rev] —At time of initial filing
§ 9-514:3 [Rev] —After initial filing
§ 9-514:4 [Rev] —Security interest in fixture covered by a mortgage
Sec. 9-515 [Rev] Duration and Effectiveness of Financing Statement; Effect of Lapsed Financing Statement
§ 9-515:2 [Rev] —Longer period for certain transactions
§ 9-515:3 [Rev] —Continuation
§ 9-515:4 [Rev] Effect of lapse
§ 9-515:5 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments
Sec. 9-516 [Rev] What Constitutes Filing; Effectiveness of Filing
§ 9-516:1 [Rev] Effectiveness of filings—Generally
§ 9-516:2 [Rev] Refusal to accept record—Generally
§ 9-516:3 [Rev] —Inadequate information
§ 9-516:4 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments
Sec. 9-517 [Rev] Effect of Indexing Errors
§ 9-517:1 [Rev] Effect of filing office errors
Sec. 9-518 [Rev] Claim Concerning Inaccurate or Wrongfully Filed Record
§ 9-518:1 [Rev] Correction statements—Need
§ 9-518:2 [Rev] —Statutory authorization to file
§ 9-518:3 [Rev] —Criteria
§ 9-518:4 [Rev] —Effect
§ 9-518:5 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments

SUBPART 2 DUTIES AND OPERATION OF FILING OFFICE

Sec. 9-519 [Rev] Numbering, Maintaining, and Indexing Records; Communicating Information Provided in Records
§ 9-519:1 [Rev] Duties of the filing office—Generally
§ 9-519:2 [Rev] File number
§ 9-519:3 [Rev] Indexing and retrieval of information—Generally
§ 9-519:4 [Rev] Indexing—Real-property-related records

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 clxxxv
Sec. 9-520 [Rev] Acceptance and Refusal to Accept Record
§ 9-520:1 [Rev] Filing office's refusal to accept record—When mandatory
§ 9-520:2 [Rev] Filing office's failure to refuse record—Effect
§ 9-520:3 [Rev] Filing office's mandatory acceptance of record
§ 9-520:4 [Rev] Record relating to more than one debtor—Application of Part 5 rules to each

Sec. 9-521 [Rev] Uniform Form of Written Financing Statement and Amendment
§ 9-521:1 [Rev] Safe harbor forms—Written records generally
§ 9-521:2 [Rev] —Form for initial financing statement
§ 9-521:3 [Rev] —Form for amendments

Sec. 9-522 [Rev] Maintenance and Destruction of Records
§ 9-522:2 [Rev] Authorization for filing office to destroy original written filings
§ 9-522:3 [Rev] Maintenance of information after lapse of financing statement

Sec. 9-523 [Rev] Information from Filing Office; Sale or License of Records
§ 9-523:1 [Rev] Filing office's duty to provide information—Generally
§ 9-523:2 [Rev] —Acknowledgment of filing of records
§ 9-523:3 [Rev] —Search results
§ 9-523:4 [Rev] —Availability of records in bulk

Sec. 9-524 [Rev] Delay by Filing Office
§ 9-524:1 [Rev] Filing office's performance of required duties after deadline

Sec. 9-525 [Rev] Fees
§ 9-525:1 [Rev] Filing fees
§ 9-525:2 [Rev] Search fees

Sec. 9-526 [Rev] Filing-Office Rules
§ 9-526:2 [Rev] —Harmonization

Sec. 9-527 [Rev] Duty to Report
§ 9-527:1 [Rev] Filing officer's duty to report

cxxxvi
Volume 9C

PART 6 [REV] DEFAULT

SUBPART 1 DEFAULT AND ENFORCEMENT OF SECURITY INTEREST

Sec. 9-601 [Rev] Rights After Default; Judicial Enforcement; Consignor or Buyer of Accounts, Chattel Paper, Payment Intangibles, or Promissory Notes

§ 9-601:1 [Rev] Overview
§ 9-601:2 [Rev] Default
§ 9-601:3 [Rev] Acceleration clauses and default
§ 9-601:4 [Rev] Acceleration and insecurity clauses
§ 9-601:5 [Rev] Rights and duties of the secured party—Generally

Sec. 9-602 [Rev] Waiver and Variance of Rights and Duties
§ 9-602:1 [Rev] Waiver of variation of rights and duties—Generally
§ 9-602:2 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments

Sec. 9-603 [Rev] Agreement on Standards Concerning Rights and Duties
§ 9-603:1 [Rev] Standards agreement—Measuring fulfillment of rights generally
§ 9-603:2 [Rev] —Inapplicability to breach the peace

Sec. 9-604 [Rev] Procedure if Security Agreement Covers Real Property or Fixtures
§ 9-604:1 [Rev] Secured party—Options when both realty and personalty are collateral
§ 9-604:2 [Rev] —Options when security agreement covers fixtures
§ 9-604:3 [Rev] —Right to remove fixtures

Sec. 9-605 [Rev] Unknown Debtor or Secondary Obligor
§ 9-605:1 [Rev] Unknown debtor or secondary obligor—Generally
§ 9-605:2 [Rev] —Protection for secured party
§ 9-605:3 [Rev] —Protection against others filing against unknown debtor

Sec. 9-606 [Rev] Time of Default for Agricultural Lien

Sec. 9-607 [Rev] Collection and Enforcement by Secured Party
§ 9-607:1 [Rev] Secured party—Collection and enforcement in general
§ 9-607:2 [Rev] —Right to receive payment directly from account debtor
§ 9-607:3 [Rev] —Rights when collateral is deposit account
§ 9-607:4 [Rev] —Right to reach collateral securing account debtor’s obligation
§ 9-607:5 [Rev] —Collection obligations
Sec. 9-608 [Rev] Application of Proceeds of Collection or Enforcement; Liability for Deficiency and Right to Surplus
§ 9-608:2 [Rev] —Order of distribution of cash
§ 9-608:3 [Rev] —Rights of senior secured parties
§ 9-608:4 [Rev] Surplus or deficiency—General rule
§ 9-608:5 [Rev] —Special rule for noncash proceeds
Sec. 9-609 [Rev] Secured Party’s Right to Take Possession After Default
§ 9-609:1 [Rev] Secured party’s right to take possession of collateral—Generally
§ 9-609:2 [Rev] —When it may be exercised
§ 9-609:3 [Rev] —Notice before repossession
§ 9-609:4 [Rev] —Self-help
§ 9-609:6 [Rev] —Consequences of breach of peace
§ 9-609:7 [Rev] —Right to require debtor to assemble collateral
§ 9-609:8 [Rev] —Effect of non-Code law; Bankruptcy and consumer protection statutes
Sec. 9-610 [Rev] Disposition of Collateral After Default
§ 9-610:1 [Rev] Disposition of collateral after default—In General
§ 9-610:2 [Rev] —Secured party’s right
§ 9-610:3 [Rev] —Commercially reasonable requirement
§ 9-610:4 [Rev] —Public versus private sale
§ 9-610:5 [Rev] —Public disposition; Advertising
§ 9-610:6 [Rev] —Prolonged retention of collateral
§ 9-610:7 [Rev] —Warranties
§ 9-610:8 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments
Sec. 9-611 [Rev] Notification Before Disposition of Collateral
§ 9-611:1 [Rev] Notification—Generally
§ 9-611:2 [Rev] Person to be notified
§ 9-611:3 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments
# Table of Contents

Sec. 9-612 [Rev]  Timeliness of Notification Before Disposition of Collateral

§ 9-612:1 [Rev]  Reasonable time for notification of disposition—General rule

§ 9-612:2 [Rev]  —Consumer transactions

Sec. 9-613 [Rev]  Contents and Form of Notification Before Disposition of Collateral: General

§ 9-613:1 [Rev]  Notification of disposition—Generally

§ 9-613:2 [Rev]  —Content and form

§ 9-613:3 [Rev]  The 2010 Amendments

Sec. 9-614 [Rev]  Contents and Form of Notification Before Disposition of Collateral: Consumer-Goods Transaction


§ 9-614:2 [Rev]  —Content and form

Sec. 9-615 [Rev]  Application of Proceeds of Disposition; Liability for Deficiency and Right to Surplus


§ 9-615:2 [Rev]  —Order of distribution of cash

§ 9-615:3 [Rev]  —Rights of senior secured parties

§ 9-615:4 [Rev]  Deficiencies—General rule

§ 9-615:5 [Rev]  Special rule—Noncash proceeds

§ 9-615:6 [Rev]  —Disposition to secured party or secondary obligor

§ 9-615:7 [Rev]  Protection for junior secured parties receiving distributions

Sec. 9-616 [Rev]  Explanation of Calculation of Surplus or Deficiency

§ 9-616:1 [Rev]  Explanation of surplus of deficiency— Generally

§ 9-616:2 [Rev]  —When it must be sent

§ 9-616:3 [Rev]  —Content

§ 9-616:4 [Rev]  —Consequences of noncompliance

Sec. 9-617 [Rev]  Rights of Transferee of Collateral

§ 9-617:1 [Rev]  Effect of secured party’s disposition of collateral and rights of transferee—Generally

§ 9-617:2 [Rev]  Effect of transfer on existing interests in the collateral

§ 9-617:3 [Rev]  Which transferees qualify for the protection of subsection (a)?

§ 9-617:4 [Rev]  Rights of transferees that do not qualify for the protection of subsection (a)
Sec. 9-618 [Rev] Rights and Duties of Certain Secondary Obligors
§ 9-618:1 [Rev] Purpose of Section 9-618
§ 9-618:2 [Rev] Secondary obligor transactions—Subrogation to rights of the secured party
§ 9-618:3 [Rev] —Receipt of assignment of secured obligation from secured party
§ 9-618:4 [Rev] —Receipt of transfer of collateral and assumption of secured party’s duties
§ 9-618:5 [Rev] Not all assignments of collateral to secondary obligor are subject to this section
Sec. 9-619 [Rev] Transfer of Record or Legal Title
§ 9-619:1 [Rev] Transfer statements—Generally
§ 9-619:2 [Rev] Transfer of record title—Effect
Sec. 9-620 [Rev] Acceptance of Collateral in Full or Partial Satisfaction of Obligation; Compulsory Disposition of Collateral
§ 9-620:1 [Rev] Strict foreclosure—In general
§ 9-620:2 [Rev] —General procedure
§ 9-620:3 [Rev] —Debtor’s consent
§ 9-620:4 [Rev] —Other interested parties’ acquiescence
§ 9-620:5 [Rev] —Good faith requirement
§ 9-620:6 [Rev] —No constructive strict foreclosure
§ 9-620:7 [Rev] —Special rules in consumer transactions
Sec. 9-621 [Rev] Notification of Proposal to Accept Collateral
§ 9-621:1 [Rev] Strict foreclosure—Parties to whom proposals must be sent
§ 9-621:2 [Rev] —Effect of failure to send proposal
Sec. 9-622 [Rev] Effect of Acceptance of Collateral
§ 9-622:1 [Rev] Strict foreclosure—Effect in general
§ 9-622:2 [Rev] —Effect of noncompliance with governing rules
Sec. 9-623 [Rev] Right to Redeem Collateral
§ 9-623:1 [Rev] Right to redeem collateral—In general
§ 9-623:2 [Rev] —How to redeem
§ 9-623:3 [Rev] —Who may redeem
§ 9-623:4 [Rev] —Redemption period
§ 9-623:5 [Rev] —Waiver
Sec. 9-624 [Rev] Waiver
§ 9-624:2 [Rev] —Notification of disposition of collateral
§ 9-624:3 [Rev] —Mandatory disposition of collateral
§ 9-624:4 [Rev] —Redemption right
PART 7 [REV] TRANSITION
Sec. 9-701 [Rev] Effective Date
§ 9-701:1 [Rev] Transactions governed by revised Article 9 [Rev]
Sec. 9-702 [Rev] Savings Clause
§ 9-702:1 [Rev] Pre-effective-date transactions generally governed by revised Article 9
§ 9-702:2 [Rev] —Exceptions
§ 9-702:3 [Rev] Continuing validity of pre-effective-date transactions not governed by former Article 9
Sec. 9-703 [Rev] Security Interest Perfected Before Effective Date
§ 9-703:1 [Rev] Continuing perfection of security interests perfected before effective date
§ 9-703:2 [Rev] Status of interests not governed by former Article 9 which were superior to rights of a lien creditor
§ 9-703:3 [Rev] Interpretation of pre-effective-date security agreements
Sec. 9-704 [Rev] Security Interest Unperfected Before Effective Date
§ 9-704:1 [Rev] Post-effective-date status of security interests unperfected before effective date
§ 9-704:2 [Rev] Perfection status of interests not governed by former Article 9 which were subordinate to rights of a lien creditor
Sec. 9-705 [Rev] Effectiveness of Action Taken Before Effective Date
§ 9-705:1 [Rev] Pre-effective-date transactions—Maintaining perfection generally
§ 9-705:2 [Rev] —Perfection other than by filing
§ 9-705:3 [Rev] —Filing in proper office under revised Article 9
§ 9-705:4 [Rev] —Filing in correct office under former Article 9 but not revised Article 9
§ 9-705:5 [Rev] —Continuing effectiveness of pre-effective date financing statements
§ 9-705:6 [Rev] Time for filing continuation statement in case of lapse on sunset date
Sec. 9-706 [Rev] When Initial Financing Statement Suffices to Continue Effectiveness of Financing Statement
§ 9-706:1 [Rev] Continuing the effectiveness of a financing
§ 9-706:2 [Rev] Differences between an “in lieu” initial financing statement and a continuation statement

§ 9-706:3 [Rev] The 2010 Amendments

Sec. 9-707 [Rev] Amendment of Pre-Effective-Date Financing Statement

§ 9-707:1 [Rev] Amendment of pre-effective-date financing statements—Generally

§ 9-707:2 [Rev] General rule for post-effective-date amendments

§ 9-707:3 [Rev] Special rule for post-effective-date continuations

§ 9-707:4 [Rev] Special rule for post-Effective-date terminations

Sec. 9-708 [Rev] Persons Entitled to File Initial Financing Statement or Continuation Statement

§ 9-708:1 [Rev] Who may file continuation statement or initial financing statement in lieu of a continuation statement

Sec. 9-709 [Rev] Priority

§ 9-709:1 [Rev] Determining priorities after effective date of revised Article 9—Generally

§ 9-709:2 [Rev] —One competing interest didn’t exist before effective date

§ 9-709:3 [Rev] —Both competing interests existed on effective date

§ 9-709:4 [Rev] —Floating liens; Pre-effective-date security agreements covering post-effective-date collateral

§ 9-709:5 [Rev] —Effect of lapse of perfection after the effective date

§ 9-709:6 [Rev] —Special rule covering pre-effective-date financing statement that becomes effective to perfect security interest only on effective date

PART 8 TRANSITION PROVISIONS FOR 2010 AMENDMENTS

SECTION 9-801 Effective Date

SECTION 9-802 Savings Clause

SECTION 9-803 Security Interest Perfected Before Effective Date

SECTION 9-804 Security Interest Unperfected Before Effective Date

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 cxci
SECTION 9-805 Effectiveness of Action Taken Before Effective Date
SECTION 9-806 When Initial Financing Statement Suffices to Continue Effectiveness of Financing Statement
SECTION 9-807 Amendment of Pre-Effective-Date Financing Statement
SECTION 9-808 Person Entitled to File Initial Financing Statement or Continuation Statement
SECTION 9-809 Priority
Appendix A. Model UCC Administrative Rules
Appendix B. Assignment of Receivables
Appendix C. 2010 Text and Comment Amendments to Article 9 [Rev]

Volume 10

ARTICLE 10 EFFECTIVE DATE AND REPEALER
U.C.C. § 10-101 Effective Date
§ 10-101:1 Nonretroactivity of the U.C.C.
§ 10-101:2 Effective dates
§ 10-101:3 “Transactions.”
§ 10-101:4 “Events.”
§ 10-101:5 Summary of meaning of “transactions” and “events”
U.C.C. § 10-102 Specific Repealer; Provision for Transition
§ 10-102:1 Savings provision
§ 10-102:2 Specific repealer
U.C.C. § 10-103 General Repealer
§ 10-103:1 In general
U.C.C. § 10-104 Laws Not Repealed
§ 10-104:1 In general

ARTICLE 11 EFFECTIVE DATE AND TRANSITION PROVISIONS
U.C.C. § 11-101 Effective Date
§ 11-101:1 In general
U.C.C. § 11-102 Preservation of Old Transition Provision
§ 11-102:1 In general
U.C.C. § 11-103 Transition of [New Code]—General Rule
cxciv
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 11-103:1 General transitional rules
U.C.C. § 11-104 Transition Provision on Change of Requirement of Filing
§ 11-104:1 Transitional requirements on filing
U.C.C. § 11-105 Transition Provision on Change of Place of Filing
§ 11-105:1 In general
U.C.C. § 11-106 Required Refilings
§ 11-106:1 In general
U.C.C. § 11-107 Transition Provisions as to Priorities
§ 11-107:1 In general
U.C.C. § 11-108 Presumption that Rule of Law Continues Unchanged
§ 11-108:1 Amendments presumptively declaratory

UNIFORM COMPUTER INFORMATION TRANSACTIONS ACT

PART 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

SUBPART A SHORT TITLE AND DEFINITIONS

§ 101 Short Title
§ 101:1 Background
§ 101:2 —Drafting process and current status
§ 101:3 —Promulgation and contemporary impact
§ 101:4 Other law and the idea that information differs from goods
§ 101:5 —Official Text and enacted versions
§ 101:6 Policy perspectives in UCITA
§ 101:7 —Information as unique subject matter
§ 101:8 —Licensing as a valid, distinct commercial practice
§ 101:9 —Contract choice and autonomy should govern
§ 101:10 —Contract law should be informed but not controlled by information law

§ 102 Definitions
§ 102:1 Background; function and interpretation of definitions
§ 102:2 2000 text comparison
§ 102:3 Definitions that primarily relate to the statutory scope
§ 102:4 —“Information” (§ 102(a)(35))
§ 102:5 —“Computer” (§ 102(a)(9))
§ 102:6 —“Computer information” (§ 102(a)(10))

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 cxcv
§ 102:7 —“Computer information transaction” (§ 102(a)(11))
§ 102:7.50 —Goods
§ 102:8 Definitions that relate to selected types of transactions
§ 102:9 —Access and on-line contracts
§ 102:10 ——“Access contract” (§ 102(a)(1))
§ 102:11 ——“Access material” (§ 102(a)(2))
§ 102:12 —Contracts or performance by automated systems
§ 102:13 ——“Automated transaction” (§ 102(a)(7))
§ 102:14 ——“Electronic agent” (§ 102(a)(27))
§ 102:15 —Financing arrangements
§ 102:16 ——“Financial accommodation contract”
§ 102:17 ——“Financier” (§ 102(a)(31))
§ 102:18 —Licenses
§ 102:19 ——Conflicting views of a license
§ 102:20 ——Types of transactions in general practice
§ 102:21 ——“License” (§ 102(a)(41))
§ 102:22 ——“Nonexclusive license” (§ 102(a)(47))
§ 102:23 ———Licenses within the same scope
§ 102:24 ———Consignments as licenses
§ 102:25 ———“Exclusive license” compared to nonexclusive
§ 102:26 ———“Release” (§ 102(a)(56))
§ 102:27 —Consumer and mass-market transactions
§ 102:28 ——Consumer transactions (§ 102(a)(15)(16))
§ 102:29 ——Mass-market licenses (§ 102(a)(44), (45))
§ 102:30 ———Retail environments and transactions
§ 102:31 ———Information directed to the general public
§ 102:32 ———Exclusions
§ 102:33 ———Sections that refer to mass-market transactions
§ 102:34 Definitions that relate to terms of the contract
§ 102:35 —“Contract” vs. “agreement” (§ 102(a)(4), (17))
§ 102:36 —Practical construction (§ 1202(a)(21), (22), (66))
§ 102:37 —Standard forms (§ 102(a)(61))
§ 102:38 —Conspicuous terms (§ 102(a)(14))
§ 102:39 ———General standard and safe harbor
§ 102:40 ———When conspicuous term required
§ 102:41 ———Terms in layered contracts
§ 102:42 ———On-line terms and conspicuousness
§ 102:43 ———Terms and electronic agents
§ 102:44 —Contractual use terms and scope (§ 102(a)(19), (58))
§ 102:45 ———Relationship between use terms and scope
§ 102:46 — Relevance of “scope” in general law
§ 102:47 Definitions that enable e-commerce
§ 102:48 — “Authenticate” (§ 102(a)(6))
§ 102:49 — “Attribution procedure” (§ 102(a)(5))
§ 102:50 — “Record” (§ 102(a)(55))
§ 102:51 — Receipt of an Electronic Notice
§ 102:52 Definitions that relate to subject matter of contract
§ 102:53 — “Computer program” (§ 102(a)(12)) compared to informational content (§ 102(a)(37))
§ 102:54 — “Published informational content” (§ 102(a)(52))
§ 102:55 — “Informational rights” (§ 102(a)(38))
§ 102:56 Definitions related to remedies: consequential damages
§ 102:57 Other Definitions: merchant (§ 102(a)(46))

[SUBPART B GENERAL SCOPE AND TERMS]
§ 103 Scope; Exclusions
§ 103:1 Scope in general
§ 103:2 Scope in general: framework and goals—Core transactions and subject matter
§ 103:3 — — Contracts to develop computer information
§ 103:4 — — Agreements to transfer computer programs
§ 103:5 — — Access and Internet contracts
§ 103:6 — — Digital database and data processing contracts
§ 103:7 — — Agreement for distribution of digital information
§ 103:8 — — Licenses of digital information
§ 103:9 — — Contracts that transfer or grant permission to exercise rights in computer information
§ 103:10 — Characterizing particular subject matter
§ 103:11 — Mixed transactions and statutory guidance
§ 103:12 — — UCITA and Article 9
§ 103:13 — — Information and goods
§ 103:14 — — Information and subject matter not within the UCC
§ 103:15 — — UCITA and motion picture development
§ 103:16 Opting in or out: § 104 (2000 text)
§ 103:17 The ideas of UCITA and law revision
§ 103:18 What law governs in the absence of UCITA?
§ 103:19 — Viewed as an issue of Article 2 scope
§ 103:20 — — Goods or services, an incomplete model
§ 103:21 — — Applying the predominant purpose test

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 103:22 — Viewed from perspective of information transactions
§ 103:23 — Specific types of contracts
§ 103:24 — — Development agreements
§ 103:25 — — Distribution and franchise contracts
§ 103:26 — — Licenses of information
§ 103:27 — — Data and data processing contracts
§ 103:28 Anti-UCITA statutes
§ 103:29 — Violation of the contract clause
§ 103:30 — Violation of Commerce Clause
§ 103:31 — Due process and scope of authority
§ 104 Consumer Protection Law Governs
§ 105 Federal Law; Fundamental Public Policy; Lawful Public Comment; Transactions Subject to Other Law
§ 105:1 Federal preemption
§ 105:2 Federal preemption and contract terms—Type of intellectual property preemption
§ 105:3 — Patent preemption of contract terms
§ 105:4 — Copyright preemption and contract terms
§ 105:5 Fundamental public policy
§ 105:6 Fundamental public policy and contract terms—Intellectual property policy
§ 105:7 — Public comment prohibitions
§ 105:8 Intellectual property misuse
§ 105:9 Intellectual property and competition law
§ 105:10 Intellectual property notices and “free software”
§ 105:11 Non-competition agreements
§ 105:12 Contract terms that preserve or destroy rights
§ 106 Rules of Construction
§ 107 Legal Recognition of Electronic Record and Authentication; Use of Electronic Agents
§ 107:1 Electronic records and signatures validated
§ 107:2 Electronic agent operations bind party
§ 107:3 What qualifies as an authentication or signature?
§ 108 Proof and Effect of Authentication
§ 108:1 Authentication and attribution
§ 109 Choice of Law
§ 109:1 Choice of law: contract terms
§ 110 Contractual Choice of Forum
§ 110:1 Forum choice presumptive enforceable and effective
§ 110:2 Limiting standards
§ 110:3 — Unconscionability
§ 111 Unconscionable Contract or Term
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 111:1 Unconscionable clauses
§ 111:2 Unconscionability and Arbitration Clauses
§ 111:3 Arbitration Clauses and CFPB
§ 112 Manifesting Assent
§ 112:1 Manifesting assent
§ 112:2 Manifesting Assent: Clickwrap
§ 112:3 Manifesting Assent: Browsewrap
§ 112:4 Manifesting Assent: Layered and Rolling Contracts
§ 112:5 Manifesting assent applied
§ 112:6 Standards for proof of assent
§ 112:7 Assent via electronic agents
§ 112:8 Assent via Agents and Installers
§ 112:9 Third Party Users Obligated by Another’s Assent
§ 113 Opportunity to Review
§ 113:1 Opportunity to review
§ 113:2 Hyperlinks and reason to know
§ 114 Pretransaction Disclosures in Internet-Type Transactions
§ 114:1 Disclosure and conspicuous terms on the Internet
§ 115 Variation by Agreement
§ 115:1 Dominance of express terms
§ 116 Supplemental Principles; Good Faith; Commercial Practice
§ 116:1 Practical construction as a theme
§ 116:2 Good faith in performance
§ 116:3 Express terms requiring good faith or best efforts
§ 117 Decision for Court; Legal Consequences; Reasonable Time; Reason to Know
§ 118 Terms Relating to Interoperability and Reverse Engineering
§ 118:1 Reverse engineering in general
§ 118:2 “No reverse engineering” contract clauses

PART 2 FORMATION AND TERMS

[SUBPART A FORMATION OF CONTRACT]

§ 201 Formal Requirements
§ 201:1 Relationship to federal law
§ 201:2 Rationale of the section
§ 201:3 E-mails and confirmations
§ 202 Formation in General
§ 202:1 Open texture and right to modify
§ 202:2 Disagreements about scope

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 202:3 Contingent on later agreement: layered contracts
§ 202:4 Complex negotiations and later documentation
§ 203 Offer and Acceptance in General
§ 203:1 Acceptance by conduct
§ 204 Acceptance with Varying Terms
§ 204:1 Material variance standard
§ 205 Conditional Offer or Acceptance
§ 205:1 Right to control terms
§ 205:2 —Right to make an offer or acceptance conditional
§ 205:3 —Battle of forms: behavior consistent with condition
§ 206 Offer and Acceptance: Electronic Agents
§ 206:1 General provisions and relation to Article 2
§ 206:2 Electronic agents interacting with humans
§ 206:3 Interactions between electronic agents
§ 207 Formation: Releases of Informational Rights

[SUBPART B TERMS OF RECORDS]
§ 208 Adopting Terms of Records
§ 208:1 Manifested assent in general
§ 208:2 Reasonable expectations test rejected
§ 208:3 Clickwrap and other standard forms
§ 208:4 Layered contracts; shrinkwrap agreements
§ 208:5 Incorporating terms by reference
§ 209 Mass-Market License
§ 210 Terms of Contract Formed by Conduct

[SUBPART C ELECTRONIC CONTRACTS: GENERALLY]
§ 211 Efficacy and Commercial Reasonableness of Attribution Procedure
§ 211:1 Effective attribution procedures
§ 212 Determining Attribution
§ 213 Electronic Error: Consumer Defenses
§ 214 Electronic Message: When Effective; Effect of Acknowledgment
§ 214:1 When is an Electronic Message Effective?

[SUBPART D IDEA AND INFORMATION SUBMISSIONS]
§ 215 Idea or Information Submission
§ 215:1 Enforceability of agreement
PART 3 CONSTRUCTION

[SUBPART A GENERAL]

§ 301 Parol or Extrinsic Evidence
§ 301:1 Records vs. extrinsic evidence
§ 301:2 Ambiguous terms
§ 301:3 Federal intellectual property rules
§ 301:4 Merger clauses and integrated contracts
§ 302 Practical Construction
§ 302:1 Preference for practical construction; hierarchy
§ 302:2 Relationship to waiver and modification
§ 302:3 Course of performance and contract formation
§ 303 Modification and Rescission
§ 303:1 No consideration required
§ 303:2 Modifications agreed to by continued use
§ 303:3 Terms preventing oral modification
§ 304 Continuing Contractual Terms
§ 304:1 Contractual change provisions
§ 305 Terms to Be Specified
§ 305:1 Unilateral amendment of a contract
§ 306 Performance under Open Terms
§ 306:1 Open terms generally
§ 306:2 Duration of contract and former § 308
§ 306:3 —Contract law default rules on duration of license
§ 306:4 —Former § 308 and perpetual licenses

[SUBPART B INTERPRETATION]

§ 307 Interpretation and Requirements for Grant
§ 307:1 The importance of scope: license as product
§ 307:2 Contract terms and scope
§ 307:3 Express and implied scope terms
§ 307:4 Scope, infringement, and breach of contract
§ 307:5 Scope and Affirmative Licensee Obligations
§ 307:6 Posting and implied license
§ 307:7 Licensor obligation to provide source code
§ 308 Agreement for Performance to Party’s Satisfaction

PART 4 WARRANTIES

§ 401 Warranty and Obligations Concerning Noninterference and Noninfringement
§ 401:1 Importance and uniqueness of the warranty
§ 401:2 Noninfringement warranty
§ 401:3 —Patent licenses excluded
§ 401:4 —Infringement and misappropriation
§ 401:5 —Rightful claim required
§ 401:6 Warranty of noninterference and of title
§ 401:7 Marketable title concept rejected
§ 401:8 Validity, public domain, and eviction as a defense
§ 402 Express Warranty
§ 402:1 Express warranties in general
§ 402:2 Express warranties: Standards for when express warranty exists
§ 402:3 Samples and demonstrations
§ 402:4 Published informational content
§ 403 Implied Warranty: Merchantability of Computer Program
§ 403:1 Information content excluded
§ 403:2 Character of warranty
§ 403:3 Ordinary use and characteristics
§ 404 Implied Warranty: Informational Content
§ 404:1 Warranty regarding accuracy grounded in contract, not tort
§ 404:2 Excludes published informational content
§ 404:3 Consulting sellers or licensors
§ 404:4 Conduit liability: Communications Decency Act
§ 404:5 Data security and privacy: new obligations
§ 405 Implied Warranty: Licensee’s Purpose; System Integration
§ 405:1 Implied as compared to express warranty
§ 405:2 The service-goods distinction adapted
§ 405:3 —Development contracts under non-UCITA law
§ 405:4 —UCITA fitness warranty and services issues
§ 406 Disclaimer or Modification of Warranty
§ 406:1 Warranties and the idea of disclaimer
§ 406:2 Express warranties and their exclusion: disclaimers
§ 406:3 Express warranties and their exclusion: parol evidence
§ 406:4 Implied warranties: form and format
§ 406:5 Implied warranties: non-UCITA limits on disclaimer
§ 406:6 Limited express warranties
§ 406:7 Disclaimers in services related contracts
§ 407 Modification of Computer Program
§ 408 Cumulation and Conflict of Warranties
§ 409 Third-Party Beneficiaries of Warranty
§ 410 No Implied Warranties for Free Software
§ 410:1 Casual transfers of computer information
§ 410:2 Open source and “free” software transactions

PART 5 TRANSFER OF INTERESTS AND RIGHTS

[SUBPART A OWNERSHIP AND TRANSFERS]
§ 501 Ownership of Informational Rights
§ 501:1 Transfer of rights
§ 501:2 Rights ownership transfer in computer programs
§ 501:3 —Transfer of copy does not convey rights ownership
§ 501:4 —Whether rights transfer intended; interpretation issues
§ 501:5 —When transfer of rights effective
§ 501:6 Intellectual property issues and restrictions on rights transfer
§ 501:7 —Divisibility rules
§ 501:8 —Federal statutes of frauds
§ 501:9 —Registration and priority statutes
§ 502 Title to Copy
§ 502:1 Relevance of title to a copy
§ 502:2 —Limited privileges under first sale
§ 502:3 —Contract enforcement is independent
§ 502:4 When is title to copy conveyed
§ 502:5 —State law standards
§ 502:6 —Federal standards
§ 502:7 Relevance of license as compared to sale: distribution chain
§ 502:8 First sale and non-contractual copyright notices
§ 503 Transfer of Contractual Interest
§ 503:1 Rule favoring transferability
§ 503:2 Nonexclusive licenses nontransferable
§ 503:3 Effect of “no transfer” clause
§ 503:4 Exception for payment rights
§ 503:5 Unauthorized transfer is ineffective
§ 504 Effect of Transfer of Contractual Interest
§ 505 Performance by Delegate; Subcontract
§ 505:1 Absence of express terms
§ 505:2 Express terms regulating delegation
§ 506 Transfer by Licensee
§ 506:1 No bona fide purchaser defense

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 cciii
[SUBPART B FINANCING ARRANGEMENTS]
§ 507 Financing if Financier Does Not Become Licensee
§ 507:1 Creation of a finance license
§ 508 Finance Licenses
§ 509 Financing Arrangements: Obligations Irrevocable
§ 509:1 Contractually Irrevocable Obligations
§ 510 Financing Arrangements: Remedies Or Enforcement
§ 511 Financing Arrangements: Effect on Licensor's Rights

PART 6 PERFORMANCE

[SUBPART A GENERAL]
§ 601 Performance of Contract in General
§ 601:1 Performance of contract in general: performance obligations and material breach
§ 601:2 Performance of contract: prior material breach
§ 602 Licensor's Obligations to Enable Use
§ 602:1 Nature of the obligation
§ 603 Submissions of Information to Satisfaction of Party
§ 603:1 Submissions of information: general standard
§ 603:2 Process of reaching decision; “copy” rules inapplicable
§ 604 Immediately Completed Performance
§ 604:1 Immediately completed performances—General issues
§ 604:2 —Informational content
§ 604:3 —Information rights
§ 605 Electronic Regulation of Performance
§ 605:1 Technology as an adjunct of contract
§ 605:2 Copyright anticircumvention rules: DMCA
§ 605:3 —Authorization by copyright owner
§ 605:4 —“Effective controls” on access
§ 605:5 —Exemptions

[SUBPART B PERFORMANCE IN DELIVERY OF COPIES]
§ 606 Copy: Delivery; Tender of Delivery
§ 607 Copy: Performance Related to Delivery; Payment
§ 607:1 Delivery of a copy—General standard
§ 607:2 —Pure rights transfer or license
§ 608 Copy: Right to Inspect; Payment Before Inspection
§ 608:1 Right to inspect a copy—General
§ 609 Copy: When Acceptance Occurs
§ 609:1 Relationship between acceptance, rejection and cure

cciv
## Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 609:2</td>
<td>Dealing with flawed performance—General</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 609:3</td>
<td>—Difference between rejection and acceptance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 609:4</td>
<td>—Standards for when acceptance occurs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 609:5</td>
<td>—Refusal, new systems, and extended periods of adjustment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 610</td>
<td>Copy: Effect of Acceptance; Burden of Establishing; Notice of Claims</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### [SUBPART C SPECIAL TYPES OF CONTRACTS]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>§ 611</th>
<th>Access Contracts</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 611:1</td>
<td>Access arrangements in general</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 611:2</td>
<td>Sources of control of access</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 611:3</td>
<td>Access provider's obligation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 611:4</td>
<td>Information downloaded from an accessed site</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 611:5</td>
<td>EU issues and online contracts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 612</td>
<td>Correction and Support Contracts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 613</td>
<td>Contracts Involving Publishers, Dealers, and End Users</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 613:1</td>
<td>Publisher—End User Relationship</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### [SUBPART D LOSS AND IMPOSSIBILITY]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>§ 614</th>
<th>Risk of Loss of Copy</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 615</td>
<td>Excuse by Failure of Presupposed Conditions</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### [SUBPART E TERMINATION]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>§ 616</th>
<th>Termination: Survival of Obligations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 616:1</td>
<td>Survival of agreement to arbitrate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 617</td>
<td>Notice of Termination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 617:1</td>
<td>Form of notice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 617:2</td>
<td>Standards for Termination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 617:3</td>
<td>When notice required in ordinary licenses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 618</td>
<td>Termination: Enforcement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 618:1</td>
<td>Effect of Termination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 618:2</td>
<td>Rightful termination ends rights to use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ 618:3</td>
<td>Return of subject matter after termination or cancellation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PART 7 BREACH OF CONTRACT

#### [SUBPART A GENERAL]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>§ 701</th>
<th>Breach of Contract; Material Breach</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ 701:1</td>
<td>Material and nonmaterial breach—Nature of the distinction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 701:2 Material breach: no contract definition
§ 701:3 Relationship between breach and infringement
§ 701:4 Breach in Absence of Damages
§ 702 Waiver of Remedy for Breach of Contract
§ 703 Cure of Breach of Contract
§ 703:1 Relationship to general performance and to handling copies

[SUBPART B DEFECTIVE COPIES]
§ 704 Copy: Refusal of Defective Tender
§ 704:1 Relationship to acceptance, cure, and revocation
§ 705 Copy: Contract with Previous Vested Grant of Rights
§ 706 Copy: Duties upon Rightful Refusal
§ 707 Copy: Revocation of Acceptance
§ 707:1 Revocation in general

[SUBPART C REPUDIATION AND ASSURANCES]
§ 708 Adequate Assurance of Performance
§ 709 Anticipatory Repudiation
§ 709:1 Anticipatory repudiation in licenses, generally
§ 710 Retraction of Anticipatory Repudiation

PART 8 REMEDIES

[SUBPART A GENERAL]
§ 801 Remedies in General
§ 801:1 No double recovery, property claim issues
§ 801:2 Breach and restrictions in contractual use terms
§ 802 Cancellation
§ 802:1 Cancellation: compared to termination and rescission
§ 802:2 Cancellation: effect
§ 802:3 —Discharge of executory obligations
§ 802:4 —Preventing further use
§ 802:5 —Returning materials
§ 802:6 When cancellation permitted; effect of contract clauses
§ 802:7 Notice of cancellation required
§ 803 Contractual Modification of Remedy
§ 803:1 Contract modifications of remedy in general
§ 803:2 Optional or exclusive remedy
§ 803:3 Failure of essential purpose
§ 803:4 Excluding or limiting damages
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 803:5 Limited remedy related to exclusion of consequential loss
§ 803:6 Particular terms: dealing with cancellation
§ 803:7 Particular terms: replace, repair of a defect or refund
§ 803:8 Particular terms: excluding consequential damages
§ 803:9 Particular terms: ancillary services agreements
§ 803:10 Limitations of liability in online contracts
§ 804 Liquidation of Damages
§ 804:1 Liquidated damages—General standards
§ 804:2 Penalties and double recovery
§ 805 Limitation of Actions
§ 805:1 Scope and applicability of section
§ 805:2 Limitations on contract terms
§ 805:3 When an action accrues
§ 805:4 —Warranties as to future performance
§ 805:5 —Special types of breach—Infringement, libel etc.
§ 806 Remedies for Fraud

[SUBPART B DAMAGES]

§ 807 Measurement of Damages in General
§ 807:1 General approach and relation to Article 2
§ 807:2 Categories of damages: consequential, direct, incidental
§ 807:3 Speculative damages not recoverable
§ 807:4 Mitigation and loss avoidance
§ 807:5 Consequential loss and published information content
§ 807:6 Compensation for wrongful use of information
§ 808 Licensor's Damages
§ 808:1 Structure and general approach
§ 808:2 —Damages relating to accepted performances
§ 808:3 —Damages in other performances; substitute transactions
§ 808:4 Licensor's consequential and incidental damages
§ 808:5 Alternative basis for recovery: intellectual property claims
§ 809 Licensee's Damages
§ 809:1 Structure and general approach
§ 810 Recoupment
§ 810:1 Nature and availability of remedy

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 ccvii
[SUBPART C REMEDIES RELATED TO PERFORMANCE]

§ 811 Specific Performance
§ 811:1 Availability in general; information differs from goods
§ 811:2 Enforcing contracts that provide for specific performance
§ 812 Completing Performance
§ 813 Continuing Use
§ 814 Discontinuing Access
§ 814:1 Control of access as a protected right
§ 815 Right to Possession and to Prevent Use
§ 815:1 Contract law right to prevent use and repossess
§ 815:2 —Judicial remedy
§ 815:3 —Self-help remedy
§ 815:4 Intellectual property and precluding use
§ 815:5 Other state law: Articles 2A and 9
§ 816 Limitations on Electronic Self-Help
§ 816:1 The political and legal context
§ 816:2 —Common law and non-UCC
§ 816:3 —UCITA compared to Articles 2A and 9
§ 816:4 The 2002 text: remedy prohibited
§ 816:5 2000 Official Text: substantive and procedural limitations

PART 9 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
§ 901 Severability
§ 902 Effective Date
§ 903 Repeals
§ 904 Previous Rights and Transactions
§ 905 Relation to Electronic Signatures in Global and National Commerce Act
§ 905:1 Need for the provision

APPENDIX 1. Concordance of UCITA 2000 and 2002

UNIFORM ELECTRONIC TRANSACTIONS ACT

UNIFORM ELECTRONIC TRANSACTIONS ACT
§ 1 Short Title
§ 2 Definitions
§ 2:0.30 Electronic record
§ 2:0.50 Electronic signature
§ 2:1 Transaction

cviii
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 2:2 Related law—Federal E-Sign
§ 2:3 —International developments
§ 3 Scope
§ 3:1 General
§ 3:2 Related law—Federal E-Sign
§ 3:3 UETA preemption by E-Sign
§ 3:4 Related law—International developments
§ 4 Prospective Application
§ 4:1 General
§ 5 Use of Electronic Records and Electronic Signatures; Variation by Agreement
§ 5:1 History, analysis, and cases
§ 5:2 Related law—Federal E-Sign and the 2005 Convention
§ 6 Construction and Application
§ 7 Legal Recognition of Electronic Records, Electronic Signatures, and Electronic Contracts
§ 7:1 History, analysis, and cases
§ 7:2 Related law—Federal E-Sign and the 2005 Convention
§ 8 Provision of Information in Writing; Presentation of Records
§ 8:1 General
§ 8:2 Related law—Federal E-Sign
§ 8:3 —Consumer protections under federal E-Sign
§ 8:4 —2005 Convention
§ 9 Attribution and Effect of Electronic Record and Electronic Signature
§ 9:1 General
§ 10 Effect of Change or Error
§ 10:1 General
§ 10:2 Related law—Federal E-Sign
§ 10:3 —The 2005 Convention
§ 11 Notarization and Acknowledgment
§ 11:1 General—Including relation to E-Sign
§ 12 Retention of Electronic Records; Originals
§ 12:1 General
§ 12:2 Related law—Federal E-Sign
§ 12:3 —The 2005 Convention
§ 13 Admissibility in Evidence
§ 13:1 General
§ 14 Automated Transaction
§ 14:1 General
§ 14:2 Related law—Federal E-Sign and the 2005 Convention
§ 15 Time and Place of Sending and Receipt
§ 15:1 General

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 ccix
PART 1. NON-U.C.C. PAYMENT METHODS

CHAPTER 1. INTRODUCTION

I. IN GENERAL
§ 1:1 Generally

II. HISTORICAL BACKGROUND
§ 1:2 Money
§ 1:3 Drafts and checks
§ 1:4 Charge and credit cards
§ 1:5 Recent Federal Court Litigation concerning credit card fees, state prohibitions of credit card surcharges by merchants
§ 1:6 Electronic fund transfers
§ 1:7 —History of wire transfers in general
§ 1:8 —Addition of federal authority to regulate cross-border remittance transfers
§ 1:9 —Introduction of federal law governing consumer electronic fund transfers
§ 1:10 —Relation of federal and state laws on funds transfers
§ 1:11 —Debit card interchange fee regulation
§ 1:12 —Challenges to the regulations implementing the Durbin debit card interchange fee regulations
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 1:13 [Reserved]
§ 1:14 Electronic fund transfers—Other automated clearing house transactions
§ 1:15 —Prohibitions on use of “remotely created checks,” “remotely created payment orders,” and other remote transactions under the FTC Telemarketing Sales Rule
§ 1:16 Other payment methods and systems
§ 1:17 —Stored-value products and gift cards
§ 1:18 —Payroll cards
§ 1:19 —Internet and mobile banking
§ 1:20 —Mobile payments
§ 1:21 —NACHA Quick Response code rules
§ 1:22 —California “registered warrants”
§ 1:23 —ECCHO and electronic check presentment
§ 1:24 —NACHA Operating Rules and Guidelines for Automated Clearing House (ACH) transactions
§ 1:25 Dodd-Frank Restoring American Financial Stability Act
§ 1:26 Challenges to the constitutionality of the CFPB, the recess appointment of CFPB Director, and the independence of the CFPB Director
§ 1:27 Virtual currencies and Bitcoin
§ 1:28 Other developments
§ 1:29 Federal and state enforcement actions aimed at online interstate lending, payments processors and depository institutions

CHAPTER 2. COVERAGE

I. DEBIT, PAYROLL, GIFT CARD, REMITTANCE TRANSFERS AND GENERAL-PURPOSE RELOADABLE PREPAID CARDS AND PAYMENT PRODUCTS

A. FEDERAL STATUTES AND REGULATIONS

§ 2:1 Introduction

B. DISCUSSION

§ 2:3 Definitions

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 ccxi
C. PROPOSED ADDITIONS TO REGULATION E

§ 2:6 General-purpose reloadable prepaid cards and similar payments products and access devices or methods
§ 2:7 —Generally
§ 2:8 —Key provisions of the proposed general-purpose reloadable card regulation
§ 2:9 —Companion proposed revisions to Regulation Z to address overdraft and credit services of general-purpose prepaid products

D. OTHER STATUTES AND REGULATIONS PERTAINING TO ELECTRONIC FUND TRANSFERS AND RELATED PREPAID PRODUCTS AND ACCESS DEVICES OR METHODS

§ 2:10 Risk management programs required of national banks for prepaid access programs
§ 2:11 State statutes dealing with gift cards and certificates that otherwise may be governed by the EFTA and Regulation E

II. CREDIT CARD TRANSFERS

A. STATUTES AND RULES


B. DISCUSSION

§ 2:13 Definitions
§ 2:14 —Open end credit
§ 2:15 —Credit
§ 2:16 —Creditor
§ 2:17 —Consumer

C. OTHER ISSUES OF CURRENT INTEREST RELATED TO CREDIT CARD TRANSFERS

§ 2:18 Arbitration agreements in credit card agreements
III. ACH TRANSFERS
   A. STATUTES AND RULES
§ 2:21 Generally
   B. DISCUSSION
§ 2:22 Definitions
§ 2:23 —ACH network
§ 2:24 —Originator
§ 2:25 —Other parties involved
§ 2:26 —ACH network operations
§ 2:27 [Reserved]

IV. OTHER PAYMENT METHODS AND SYSTEMS: ECCHO, STORED VALUE, PAYPAL, INTERNET AND MOBILE BANKING, MOBILE PAYMENTS, INCLUDING APPLE PAY, AND CALIFORNIA REGISTERED WARRANTS
   A. STATUTES AND RULES
§ 2:28 Generally
   B. DISCUSSION
§ 2:29 ECCHO check presentment
§ 2:30 Stored value (also known as prepaid cards and prepaid access)
§ 2:31 Other payment methods and systems: PayPal, internet and mobile banking, and other mobile financial services including Apple Pay
§ 2:32 Federal and state enforcement actions aimed at payments made to online interstate lenders, payments processors, or depository institutions
V. PAYMENTS VIA VIRTUAL OR CRYPTO CURRENCIES, INCLUDING BITCOIN, AND REGULATION OF VIRTUAL CURRENCY BUSINESSES

A. FEDERAL STATUTES AND REGULATIONS

§ 2:33 Federal statutes and regulations

B. STATE STATUTES AND REGULATIONS

§ 2:34 State statutes and regulations

CHAPTER 3. DISCLOSURE AND EVIDENCE OF TRANSFERS

I. DEBIT CARDS, PAYROLL CARDS, GIFT CARDS, GENERAL-PURPOSE PREPAID CARDS, AND REMITTANCE TRANSFERS

A. STATUTES AND RULES

§ 3:1 Introduction

§ 3:2 Terms and conditions of transfers as set forth in the EFTA [15 U.S.C.A. § 1693c]

§ 3:3 Terms and conditions of transfers as set forth in Regulation E Subpart A [12 C.F.R. §§ 1005.4, 1005.5, 1005.6, 1005.8, 1005.10]

§ 3:4 Documentation of transfers as set forth in the EFTA [15 U.S.C.A. § 1693d]

§ 3:5 Documentation of transfers for governed by Subpart A as set forth in Regulation E [12 C.F.R. § 1005.9]

§ 3:6 Documentation of transfers for remittance transfers governed by Subpart B as set forth in Regulation E [12 C.F.R. §§ 1005.31, 1005.34]

B. DISCUSSION

1. General Issues including Preemption and Exemption

§ 3:7 Generally

§ 3:8 Statewide exemptions from the EFTA and Regulation E

§ 3:9 Preemption of inconsistent state laws under the EFTA and Regulation E
§ 3:10 Regulation E disclosure requirements for payroll cards

§ 3:11 Special disclosure requirements for ATM debit card transactions

§ 3:12 Special requirements for pre-authorized debit transfers

§ 3:13 Periodic statements may be provided electronically

2. Proposed Coverage of General Purpose Reloadable Prepaid Cards

§ 3:14 Proposed CFPB Amendments to Regulations E and Z for general purpose reloadable prepaid cards

C. LIMITATIONS ON DEBIT CARD INTERCHANGE FEES AND ASSOCIATION INDUSTRY CHALLENGES

§ 3:15 Dodd-Frank Act limitations on Debit Card Interchange Fees, Regulation II, and industry challenges

D. FORMAT RULES FOR EFTA AND REGULATION E DISCLOSURES

§ 3:16 Format rules

II. CREDIT CARD TRANSFERS

A. STATUTES AND RULES


§ 3:19 Form of disclosure; additional information [15 U.S.C.A. § 1632]

§ 3:20 Right of rescission as to certain transactions [15 U.S.C.A. § 1635]


§ 3:22 Disclosure requirements for open end consumer credit plans secured by the consumer’s principal dwelling [15 U.S.C.A. § 1637a]

B. DISCUSSION

§ 3:24 Generally; preemption and exemption
§ 3:25 Basic open-end credit disclosures
§ 3:26 Advertising open-end credit plans
§ 3:27 Initial disclosures for open-end credit
§ 3:28 Disclosures of and imitations on open-end credit plans during the plan's first year
§ 3:29 Other disclosures
§ 3:30 Changes in terms for open-end credit plans
§ 3:31 State statutes and open-end credit plans

III. ACH TRANSFERS

A. STATUTES AND RULES

1. Generally

§ 3:32 Generally

2. Disclosure Responsibilities under NACHA’s Operating Rules
   a. Disclosures Required of Originators and Receivers

§ 3:33 Disclosure by Originator and Receiver
   b. Additional Disclosures and Evidences of Transfers

§ 3:34 Other disclosures and evidentiary requirements
§ 3:35 International ACH Transfers (IATs) under NACHA's Rules

B. DISCUSSION

§ 3:36 Litigation involving NACHA's Rules or otherwise relating to them

IV. OTHER PAYMENT METHODS AND SYSTEMS: PAYPAL, INTERNET AND MOBILE BANKING, AND OTHER MOBILE FINANCIAL SERVICES

A. STATUTES AND RULES

§ 3:37 Generally

ccxvi
CHAPTER 4. UNAUTHORIZED TRANSFERS

I. DEBIT CARD TRANSFERS
   A. STATUTES AND RULES
      § 4:1 Issuance of cards or other means of access [15 U.S.C.A. § 1693i]
      § 4:4 Other statutes and rules
   B. DISCUSSION
      § 4:5 State law limitations on consumer loss
      § 4:6 Federal limitations on consumer loss

II. CREDIT CARD TRANSFERS
   A. STATUTES AND RULES
      § 4:10 Business credit cards; limits on liability of employees [15 U.S.C.A. § 1645]
      § 4:11 Other
   B. DISCUSSION
      § 4:12 Federal limitation on liability
§ 4:13  State laws limiting liability

III. ACH TRANSFERS
   A. STATUTES AND RULES
§ 4:14  Generally
   B. DISCUSSION
§ 4:15  Generally
§ 4:16  Unauthorized use prevention
§ 4:17  Allocation of loss

IV. OTHER PAYMENT METHODS AND SYSTEMS: PAYPAL, INTERNET AND MOBILE BANKING, OTHER MOBILE FINANCIAL SERVICES, AND CALIFORNIA REGISTERED WARRANTS
   A. STATUTES AND RULES
§ 4:18  Generally
   B. DISCUSSION
§ 4:19  ECCHO check presentment
   C. STORED VALUE AND OTHER METHODS AND SYSTEMS
§ 4:20  Gift cards
§ 4:21  Other methods and systems

CHAPTER 5. ERROR PREVENTION AND RESOLUTION

I. DEBIT AND PAYROLL CARD TRANSFERS
   A. STATUTES AND RULES
   B. DISCUSSION
§ 5:3  Error resolution: State laws
II. CREDIT CARD TRANSFERS
   A. STATUTES AND RULES
   B. DISCUSSION
      § 5:6 Error resolution: State laws
      § 5:7 Error resolution: Federal law

III. ACH TRANSFERS
   A. STATUTES AND RULES
      § 5:8 Generally
   B. DISCUSSION
      § 5:9 Generally
      § 5:10 Error prevention
      § 5:11 Error resolution

IV. ERROR RESOLUTION UNDER THE ECCHO OPERATING RULES
   A. STATUTES AND RULES
      1. ECCHO Operating Rules and Commentary
         § 5:12 General Dispute Resolution under the ECCHO Operating Rules [Operating Rule XIV]
         § 5:13 Dispute resolution for breaches of warranty for remotely created checks [ECCHO Operating Rule XIX(N)]
         § 5:14 Error resolution procedures for claims for breach of forged and counterfeit check warranties [ECCHO Operating Rule XIX(O)]
      2. Relation of ECCHO Operating Rules to Federal and State Laws
         § 5:15 Error resolution: Federal law
         § 5:16 Error resolution: State law
B. DISCUSSION

1. ECCHO’s Error Resolution Rules, Generally

§ 5:17 General discussion of the ECCHO Error resolution rules

§ 5:18 —Preemption of alteration Rule XIX(P)

2. Specific ECCHO Error Resolution Rules

a. ECCHO Section XIV General Dispute Resolution

§ 5:19 Discussion of ECCHO’s general dispute resolution procedures

b. ECCHO Section XIX(N) “Remotely Created Check” Resolution

§ 5:20 Error Resolution procedures for “remotely created checks” subject to Regulation CC

c. ECCHO Forged and Counterfeit Check Dispute Resolution

§ 5:21 ECCHO Operating Rules for claims of breach of forged and counterfeit check warranties

§ 5:22 ECCHO error resolution relating to transmission of images of savings bonds for redemption by U.S. treasury department

V. GIFT CARDS AND OTHER STORED VALUE METHODS AND SYSTEMS

A. GIFT CARDS

1. Statutes and Rules

§ 5:23 Error resolution for gift cards: Federal law

§ 5:24 Error resolution for gift cards: State law

2. Discussion

§ 5:25 Generally

B. OTHER METHODS AND SYSTEMS

1. PayPal

a. Statutes and Rules

§ 5:26 Error resolution for PayPal accounts: Federal law
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 5:27 Error resolution for PayPal accounts: State law
   b. Discussion
      (1) The Roadmap to Statutory and Contractual Error Resolution under the PayPal User Agreement

§ 5:28 PayPal’s User Agreement roadmap
   (2) Statutory Error Resolution under the PayPal User Agreement

§ 5:29 Error resolution under PayPal’s User Agreement
   (3) Contractual Dispute Resolution through PayPal’s Dispute Resolution Center

§ 5:30 Non-EFTA error resolution procedures
   (4) Special Rules for Disputes between PayPal and Its Users

§ 5:31 Disputes between PayPal and users
   2. Home/Internet Banking
      a. Statutes and Rules
         § 5:32 Error resolution: Federal law
         § 5:33 Error resolution: State law
      b. Discussion
         § 5:34 Generally
   3. Mobile Payments
      a. Statutes and Rules
         § 5:35 Error resolution: Federal law
         § 5:36 Error resolution: State law

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 ccxxi
b. Discussion

(1) Overview

§ 5:37 Generally

(2) Other Mobile Payments Providers

§ 5:38 Other providers of mobile payments

(3) PayPal Mobile Payments

§ 5:39 PayPal Mobile

4. Prepaid Debit Cards Not Payroll-Related

a. Statutes and Rules

§ 5:40 Error resolution: Federal law

§ 5:41 Error resolution: State law

b. Discussion

§ 5:42 Generally

§ 5:43 Proposed complaint process and reporting under the New York State Department of Financial Services “BitLicense” regulations

§ 5:44 Complaint Information under the Uniform Law Commission’s Regulation of Virtual Currency Business Act

CHAPTER 6. REGULATION OF CHARGES, AGREEMENTS AND PRACTICES

I. DEBIT AND OTHER CARD TRANSFERS

A. STATUTES AND RULES


§ 6:2 Notification of changes to consumer [15 U.S.C.A. § 1693c(b)]


B. DISCUSSION

§ 6:5 Statutes and rules, generally
II. CREDIT CARD TRANSFERS
   A. STATUTES AND RULES
   § 6:7 Home equity plans [15 U.S.C.A. § 1647(b), (c), (d), (e)]
   § 6:11 Notification of credit card issuer by seller of return of goods, etc., by obligor; credit for account of obligor [15 U.S.C.A. § 1666e]
   § 6:12 Inducements to cardholders by sellers of cash discounts for payments by cash, check or similar means; finance charge for sales transactions involving cash discounts [15 U.S.C.A. § 1666f]
   § 6:14 Offset of cardholder’s indebtedness by issuer of credit card with funds deposited with issuer by cardholder; remedies of creditors under State Law not affected [15 U.S.C.A. § 1666h]
   § 6:15 Assertion by cardholder against card issuer of claims and defenses arising out of credit card transaction; prerequisites; limitation on amount of claims or defenses [15 U.S.C.A. § 1666i]
   § 6:17 Preventing unfair and deceptive private educational lending practices and eliminating conflicts of interest [15 U.S.C.A. § 1650]
   § 6:19 Interest rate reduction on open end consumer credit plans [15 U.S.C.A. § 1665c]
   § 6:20 Reasonable penalty fees on open end consumer credit plans [15 U.S.C.A. § 1665d]
   § 6:21 Consideration of ability to repay [15 U.S.C.A. § 1665e]
   § 6:22 Limits on interest rate, fee, and finance charge increases applicable to outstanding balances [15 U.S.C.A. § 1666i-1]
§ 6:24 1974 Uniform Consumer Credit Code
§ 6:25 Vermont statutes and rules
§ 6:26 —Department of Banking, Insurance, Securities and Health Care Administration rules
§ 6:27 —Attorney general’s consumer fraud rules

B. DISCUSSION

§ 6:28 Generally
§ 6:29 Bifurcated state law structure
§ 6:30 General federal preemption
§ 6:31 Specific federal law: Charges, agreements, and practices
§ 6:32 —Open-end credit secured by consumer dwellings
§ 6:33 —Credit card transfers
§ 6:34 —Overdraft protection programs
§ 6:35 —Credit CARD Act of 2009 limitations and substantive requirements
§ 6:36 —Credit extensions to consumers under the age of 21
§ 6:37 —Interchange fees litigation
§ 6:38 —Other litigation involving fees or disputes about fees, including arbitration clauses
§ 6:39 Uniform Consumer Credit Code
§ 6:40 State law other than the Uniform Consumer Credit Code

III. ACH TRANSFERS

A. STATUTES AND RULES

§ 6:41 Generally

B. DISCUSSION

§ 6:42 Charges
§ 6:43 Agreement and practices

IV. ECCHO ELECTRONIC CHECK PRESENTMENTS

A. STATUTES AND RULES

§ 6:44 Generally
B. DISCUSSION

§ 6:45 Charges

V. STORED VALUE AND OTHER METHODS AND SYSTEMS

A. GIFT CARDS

1. Statutes and Regulations

§ 6:46 Regulation of fees and charges: Federal law
§ 6:47 Regulation of fees and charges: State law
§ 6:48 Special considerations for federally chartered issuers of gift cards and their operating subsidiaries

2. Discussion

§ 6:49 Fees and charges

B. OTHER METHODS AND SYSTEMS

1. PayPal

   a. Statutes and Regulations

§ 6:50 Regulation of fees and charges: Federal law and PayPal
§ 6:51 Regulation of fees and charges: State law and PayPal

   b. Discussion of PayPal Contractual Provisions on Fees and Charges

§ 6:52 Generally

2. Internet and Mobile Banking

§ 6:53 Regulation of fees and charges: Federal law and Home Banking

3. Mobile Payments

   a. Statutes and Regulations

§ 6:54 Regulation of fees and charges: Federal law and mobile payments
§ 6:55 Regulation of fees and charges: State law and mobile payments

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 ccxxv
b. Discussion: Mobile Payments
Contractual Charges and Fees

(1) Overview

§ 6:56 Generally

(2) Specific Mobile Payment Products and Providers

§ 6:57 PayPal Mobile and Apple Pay
§ 6:58 Regulation and licensure of non-depository mobile payment providers and stored-value device issuers

4. General-use prepaid cards
   a. Statutes and Rules

§ 6:59 Regulation of fees and charges: Federal law and non-gift, non-payroll cards
§ 6:60 Fees and charges: State law and non-gift, non-payroll cards

b. Discussion

§ 6:61 Types of non-gift, non-payroll prepaid debit cards, generally

VI. REGULATION OF AGREEMENTS

A. ECCHO CHECK PRESENTMENTS: REGULATION OF AGREEMENTS

1. Statutes and Rules
   a. Federal Law

§ 6:62 Regulation of agreements: Federal law and ECCHO presentments

   b. State Law

§ 6:63 Regulation of agreements: State law and ECCHO presentments

2. Discussion

§ 6:64 Generally

cxxxvi
B. STORED VALUE AND OTHER METHODS AND SYSTEMS

1. Gift Cards
   a. Statutes and Rules
      (1) Federal Law
      § 6:65 Regulation of agreements: Federal law and Gift Cards
      (2) State Law
      § 6:66 Regulation of agreements: State law and Gift Cards
      b. Discussion
      § 6:67 Generally

2. PayPal
   a. Federal Law
   § 6:68 Regulation of agreements: Federal law and PayPal
   b. State Law
   § 6:69 Regulation of agreements: State law and PayPal

3. Home Banking
   a. Statutes and Rules
      (1) Federal Law
      § 6:70 Regulation of agreements: Federal law and home banking
      (2) State Law
      § 6:71 Regulation of agreements: State law and home banking
      b. Discussion
      § 6:72 [Reserved]
4. Mobile Payments
   a. Statutes and Rules
      (1) Federal Law
      § 6:73 Regulation of agreements: Federal law and mobile payments
      (2) State Law
      § 6:74 Regulation of agreements: State law and mobile payments
      b. Discussion
      § 6:75 Generally

5. Non-Gift, Non-Payroll Prepaid Debit Cards
   a. Statutes and Rules
      (1) Federal Law
      § 6:76 Regulation of agreements: Federal law and non-gift, non-payroll cards
      (2) State Law
      § 6:77 Regulation of agreements: State law and non-gift, non-payroll cards
      b. Discussion
      § 6:78 Generally

VII. REGULATION OF PRACTICES

A. REGULATION OF PRACTICES FOR ECCHO CHECK PRESENTMENTS
   1. Statutes and Rules
      a. Federal Law
      § 6:79 Regulation of practices: Federal law and ECCHO check presentments
      b. State Law
      § 6:80 Regulation of practices: State law and ECCHO check presentments
   2. Discussion
      § 6:81 Generally
B. REGULATION OF PRACTICES FOR STORED VALUE AND OTHER METHODS AND SYSTEMS

1. Gift Cards

§ 6:82 Regulation of practices: Federal law and Gift Cards

§ 6:83 Regulation of practices: Federal law and PayPal

2. Other Methods and Systems

a. PayPal

(b) State Law

§ 6:84 Regulation of practices: State law and PayPal

(2) Discussion

§ 6:85 Generally

b. Home Banking

(1) Statutes and Rules

(a) Federal Law

§ 6:86 Regulation of practices: Federal law and home banking

(b) State Law

§ 6:87 Regulation of practices: State law and home banking

(2) Discussion

§ 6:88 Home/Internet banking methodology

c. Mobile Payments

(1) Statutes and Rules

(a) Federal Law

§ 6:89 Regulation of practices: Federal law and mobile payments
(b) State Law

§ 6:90 Regulation of practices: State law and mobile payments

(2) Discussion

§ 6:91 Generally
d. Non-Gift Card, Non-Payroll Prepaid Debit Cards

(1) Statutes and Rules
(a) Federal Law

§ 6:92 Regulation of practices: Federal law and non-gift, non-payroll prepaid debit cards

(b) State Law

§ 6:93 Regulation of practices: State law and non-gift, non-payroll prepaid debit cards

(2) Discussion

§ 6:94 [Reserved]

C. REGULATION OF VIRTUAL CURRENCY TRANSACTIONS

1. Statutes and Regulations
   a. Federal Law

§ 6:95 Federal statutes, regulations, and Executive Orders affecting virtual currency transactions

   b. State Law

§ 6:96 State statutes and regulations pertaining to virtual currency transactions

2. Discussion

§ 6:97 Generally
D. REGULATION OF ELECTRONIC PAYMENTS MADE TO PROVIDERS OF ONLINE INTERSTATE CONSUMER CREDIT PRODUCTS, PAYMENTS PROCESSORS AND DEPOSITORY INSTITUTIONS

1. Statutes and Regulations
   a. Federal Law
      § 6:98 Federal statutes and regulations pertaining to electronic payments to providers of online interstate consumer credit products
   b. State Law
      § 6:99 State statutes and regulations pertaining to electronic payments to providers of online interstate consumer credit products
   c. System Rules
      § 6:100 System rules pertaining to electronic payments to providers of online interstate consumer credit products

2. Discussion
   § 6:101 Generally

CHAPTER 7. ENFORCEMENT

I. DEBIT AND OTHER CARD TRANSFERS
   A. STATUTES AND RULES
      § 7:3 Civil liability [15 U.S.C.A. § 1693m]
      § 7:6 Representative state laws

   B. DISCUSSION
      § 7:7 State law enforcement patterns, generally
      § 7:8 Federal law enforcement, generally
II. CREDIT CARD TRANSFERS

A. STATUTES AND RULES

§ 7:10 Criminal liability for willful and knowing violation [15 U.S.C.A. § 1611]
§ 7:11 Right of rescission as to certain transactions [15 U.S.C.A. § 1635]
§ 7:15 Regulation of credit reports [15 U.S.C.A. § 1666a]
§ 7:16 1974 Uniform Consumer Credit Code and other state laws
§ 7:17 —Oklahoma statutes annotated
§ 7:18 —Vermont statutes annotated

B. DISCUSSION

§ 7:19 State law enforcement, generally
§ 7:20 Federal and state enforcement laws relating to credit card transfers
§ 7:21 Federal enforcement laws relating to credit card transfers
§ 7:22 Federal administrative enforcement powers relating to credit card transfers
§ 7:23 Federal criminal statutes and enforcement actions relating to credit card transfers
§ 7:24 Federal civil enforcement authority and actions relating to credit card transfers
§ 7:25 Enforcement of state laws relating to credit card transfers; surcharges

III. ENFORCEMENT: ACH TRANSFERS

A. STATUTES AND RULES

§ 7:26 Generally

B. DISCUSSION

§ 7:27 Agreements between participating parties; applicable rules
IV. ENFORCEMENT: ECCHO ELECTRONIC CHECK PRESENTMENT

A. STATUTES AND REGULATIONS

1. Federal Law

§ 7:28 Federal law enforcement and ECCHO electronic check presentment

2. State Law

§ 7:29 State law enforcement and ECCHO electronic check presentment

B. DISCUSSION

1. ECCHO's General Dispute Resolution Procedures

a. Generally

§ 7:30 Overview
§ 7:31 General dispute resolution under ECCHO's procedures

b. Controversies Eligible for Section XIV Dispute Resolution

§ 7:32 Amount in controversy needed for arbitration under ECCHO Operating Rules Section XIV

c. Commencement of Section XIV Dispute Resolution

§ 7:33 Time allowed for initiating complaints under ECCHO Operating Rules Section XIV

2. ECCHO's Special “Remotely Created Check” Dispute Resolution Procedures

a. Generally

§ 7:34 Dispute resolution involving “remotely created checks” under ECCHO Operating Rules Section XIX(N), generally

b. Eligibility for Section XIX(N) Dispute Resolution

§ 7:35 ECCHO's XIX(N) dispute resolution eligibility

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
c. “Disclaimers” of Disputes under Section XIX(N)

§ 7:36 Procedures for “disclaiming” (disputing) claims filed under Section XIX(N)

d. Maximum Liability under Section XIX(N)

§ 7:37 Maximum liability for breach of remotely created check warranties

e. Unlimited Amounts in Controversy for Remotely Created Checks

§ 7:38 Amount in controversy needed for dispute resolution under ECCHO Operating Rule Section XIX(N)

f. Commencement of Section XIX(N) Disputes

§ 7:39 Time allowed for initiating complaints under ECCHO Operating Rules Section XIX(N)

g. Timeframes for “Disclaimers” of Section XIX(N) Disputes

§ 7:40 Time allowed for depositary bank to “disclaim” a claim under ECCHO Operating Rules Section XIX(N)

3. ECCHO’s Special Forged and Counterfeit Check Dispute Resolution Procedures

a. Generally

§ 7:41 Dispute resolution involving forged and counterfeit checks under ECCHO Operating Rules Section XIX(O)

b. Limits on Use of Section XIX(O) Dispute Resolution

§ 7:42 Exceptions to application of ECCHO Operating Rules Section XIX(O)

c. Commencement of Section XIX(O) Disputes

§ 7:43 Time allowed for initiating complaints under ECCHO Operating Rules Section XIX(O)
d. Other Important Timing Rules for Section XIX(O) Dispute Resolution

§ 7:44 Important timing consideration for ECCHO Operating Rules Section XIX(O) warranty claims

e. Depositary Bank Disclaimers of Section XIX(O) Breach of Warranty Claims

§ 7:45 Disclaimer by depositary bank of ECCHO Operating Rules Section XIX(O) warranty claim

f. Amounts in Controversy under Section XIX(O)

§ 7:46 Amount in controversy needed for dispute resolution under ECCHO Operating Rule Section XIX(O)

g. Check 21 Expedited Recredits for Consumers

§ 7:47 Expedited recredits for consumer customers and banks under Check 21 and regulation and the ECCHO Operating Rules Section XIX(P)

C. REPORTED ENFORCEMENT DECISIONS UNDER ECCHO’S OPERATING RULES

§ 7:48 Reported enforcement decisions under ECCHO’s dispute resolution rules

V. STORED VALUE AND OTHER METHODS AND SYSTEMS

A. GIFT CARDS

1. Statutes and Rules

a. Enforcement: Federal Law and Gift Cards

§ 7:49 Gift card enforcement under federal law

b. Enforcement: State Law and Gift Cards

§ 7:50 Gift card enforcement under state law
2. Discussion

§ 7:51 Enforcement actions

B. OTHER METHODS AND SYSTEMS

1. PayPal
   a. Statutes and Rules
      (1) Federal Law
      § 7:52 Federal enforcement and PayPal
      (2) State Law
      § 7:53 State enforcement and PayPal
   b. Discussion
      § 7:54 Federal enforcement actions against Paypal
      § 7:55 State enforcement actions against PayPal

2. Internet and Mobile Banking
   a. Statutes and Rules
      (1) Federal Law
      § 7:56 Enforcement: Federal law and home banking agreements
      (2) State Law
      § 7:57 Enforcement: State law and home banking agreements
   b. Discussion
      § 7:58 Generally

3. Mobile Payments
   a. Statutes and Rules
      (1) Federal Law
      § 7:59 Federal law: Enforcement and mobile payments
      (2) State Law
      § 7:60 State law: Enforcement and mobile payments
   b. Discussion
      § 7:61 Generally
TABLE OF CONTENTS

4. Non-Gift, Non-Payroll Prepaid Cards
   a. Statutes and Rules
      (1) Federal Law
      § 7:62 Enforcement: Federal law and non-gift, non-payroll prepaid cards
      (2) State Law and Non-Gift, Non-Payroll Cards
      § 7:63 Enforcement: State law and non-gift, non-payroll prepaid cards
   b. Discussion
      § 7:64 Generally

VI. VIRTUAL CURRENCY TRANSACTIONS
   A. VIRTUAL CURRENCY INCLUDING BITCOIN
      1. Statutes and Rules
         a. Enforcement: Federal Law and Virtual Currency
         § 7:65 Virtual currency enforcement under federal law
         b. Enforcement: State Law and Virtual Currency
         § 7:66 Virtual currency enforcement under state law
      2. Discussion
         § 7:67 Generally
VII. FEDERAL AND STATE ENFORCEMENT
ACTIONS AIMED AT ONLINE INTERSTATE
LENDING, PAYMENTS PROCESSORS, AND
DEPOSITORY INSTITUTIONS.

A. ACTIONS DIRECTED AT ONLINE
INTERSTATE PROVIDERS OF CONSUMER
CREDIT PRODUCTS

1. Statutes and Rules
   a. Enforcement: Federal Law and
      Payments to Online Interstate
      Lenders

§ 7:68 Enforcement actions against online interstate
lenders under federal law

   b. Enforcement: State Law and
      Payments to Online Interstate
      Lenders

§ 7:69 Enforcement actions against online interstate
lenders under state law

2. Discussion

§ 7:70 Generally

B. ACTIONS DIRECTED AT PAYMENTS
PROCESSORS

1. Statutes and Rules
   a. Enforcement: Federal Law and
      Payments Processors

§ 7:71 [Reserved]

   b. Enforcement: State Law and
      Payments Processors

§ 7:72 [Reserved]

2. Discussion

§ 7:73 Generally
# Table of Contents

C. ACTIONS DIRECTED AT DEPOSITORY INSTITUTIONS WHOSE CUSTOMERS ARE ONLINE INTERSTATE LENDERS OR PAYMENTS PROCESSORS

1. Statutes and Rules
   a. Enforcement: Federal Law and Depository Institutions
      § 7:74 Federal enforcement actions against depository institutions processing payments on behalf of online interstate lenders or their payment processors
   b. Enforcement: State Law and Depository Institutions
      § 7:75 State enforcement actions against depository institutions processing payments on behalf of online interstate lenders or their payment processors [Reserved]

2. Discussion
   § 7:76 Generally

VIII. PAYMENTS MADE BY MILITARY ALLOTMENTS

A. ENFORCEMENT OF FEDERAL STATUTES, REGULATIONS, AND POLICIES
   § 7:77 Department of Defense limits service members’ use of military allotments to pay creditors

B. ENFORCEMENT STATE STATUTES, REGULATIONS, AND POLICIES
   § 7:78 [Reserved]

C. DISCUSSION
   § 7:79 Discussion

IX. ENFORCEMENT OF RESTRICTIONS ON THE EXPORTATION OF RATES AND TERMS BY BANKS TO NON-BANKS

A. FEDERAL STATUTES AND REGULATIONS
   § 7:80 Federal law enforcement of restrictions on the
exportation of rates and terms by banks to non-banks

B. STATE STATUTES AND REGULATIONS

§ 7:81 State law enforcement of restrictions on the exportation of rates and terms by banks to non-banks

C. DISCUSSION

§ 7:82 Discussion

X. FTC ENFORCEMENT ACTIONS CONCERNING PAYMENT PRODUCTS AND PROVIDERS UNDER THE FTC’S UDAP AUTHORITY AND THE SCOPE OF THE CFPB’S UDAAP AUTHORITY

A. FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION ENFORCEMENT ACTIONS UNDER ITS UDAP AUTHORITY

§ 7:83 FTC enforcement actions under its UDAP authority

B. CFPB ENFORCEMENT ACTIONS UNDER ITS UDAAP AUTHORITY

§ 7:84 CFPB enforcement actions under its UDAAP authority

Volume 10B
## PART 2. INTERNATIONAL COMMERCIAL CONVENTIONS

## CHAPTER 8. PRIVATE LAW CONVENTIONS WITHIN THE SCOPE OF THE UNIFORM COMMERCIAL CODE

### I. INTRODUCTION TO PRIVATE LAW CONVENTIONS

§ 8:1 Private Law Conventions and the Uniform Commercial Code  
§ 8:2 Definition of “Treaty” and “Convention”  
§ 8:3 “Model Laws,” “Principles,” and “Legal Guides”

### II. ORGANIZATIONS THAT DRAFT PRIVATE LAW CONVENTIONS

§ 8:4 Generally  
§ 8:5 UNCITRAL  
§ 8:6 UNIDROIT  
§ 8:7 The Hague Conference

### III. THE UNITED STATES TREATY RATIFICATION PROCESS

§ 8:8 Generally  
§ 8:9 Office of Private International Law (L/PIL)  
§ 8:10 Interagency consultation  
§ 8:11 Signature  
§ 8:12 Transmittal and senate advice and consent  
§ 8:13 Deposit of instrument of ratification  
§ 8:14 Entry into force  
§ 8:15 Consent by accession

### IV. RESERVATIONS, UNDERSTANDINGS AND DECLARATIONS

§ 8:16 Generally  
§ 8:17 Reservations  
§ 8:18 Understandings  
§ 8:19 Declarations
V. EFFECT OF RATIFICATION OF A PRIVATE LAW CONVENTION ON U.S. LAW

§ 8:20 Generally
§ 8:21 The international obligation
§ 8:22 Effect on U.S. Domestic Law
§ 8:23 Preemption under the Supremacy Clause

CHAPTER 9. THE CONVENTION ON INTERNATIONAL INTERESTS IN MOBILE EQUIPMENT (CAPE TOWN CONVENTION)

I. INTRODUCTION (CONVENTION PREAMBLE AND ARTICLE 1)

§ 9:1 Purposes of the Convention
§ 9:2 Structure of the Convention; Protocols
§ 9:3 Background and status of the Convention and Protocols
§ 9:4 Declarations
§ 9:5 Regulations and Procedures of International Registry
§ 9:6 Language of the Convention
§ 9:7 Interpreting and understanding the Convention
§ 9:8 How the Convention compares with U.C.C. Article 9
§ 9:9 Definitions

II. APPLICATION OF THE CONVENTION

A. SCOPE OF CONVENTION (CONVENTION ARTICLE 2)

§ 9:10 Generally
§ 9:11 International interest defined
§ 9:12 Types of international interest
§ 9:13 Distinguishing among types of international interest
§ 9:14 Parties to international interest
§ 9:15 Interests included in international interest
§ 9:16 Fractional shares
§ 9:17 “Uniquely identifiable object”
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 9:18  “Mobile equipment”
§ 9:19  Proceeds
§ 9:20  Associated rights
§ 9:21  Sales

B. CONNECTION BETWEEN THE CONVENTION AND THE TRANSACTION (CONVENTION ARTICLES 3 AND 4)

§ 9:22  Location of debtor
§ 9:23  State of registry
§ 9:24  Where debtor is situated

III. INTERPRETATION OF THE CONVENTION (CONVENTION ARTICLES 5 AND 6)

§ 9:25  Generally
§ 9:26  Law governing matters not settled by the Convention
§ 9:27  Agreement concerning governing law
§ 9:28  Relationship between the Convention and the Protocol

IV. CONDITIONS FOR CONSTITUTING AN INTERNATIONAL INTEREST; CONTRACT OF SALE (CONVENTION ARTICLE 7)

§ 9:29  Generally
§ 9:30  “In writing”
§ 9:31  “Power to dispose”
§ 9:32  Identification of object
§ 9:33  Obligation secured
§ 9:34  Formal requirements for contract of sale

V. CREDITOR’S REMEDIES

A. THE CONVENTION’S REMEDIAL SCHEME (CONVENTION ARTICLES 8 TO 15)

§ 9:35  Overview

B. REMEDIES OF CHARGEES/SECURED PARTY (CONVENTION ARTICLES 8 AND 9)

§ 9:36  Possession and disposition

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 ccxliii
§ 9:37 Declarations concerning self-help
§ 9:38 Mechanics of self-help
§ 9:39 Collection of income or profits
§ 9:40 Application of proceeds of collection or disposition
§ 9:41 De-registration and export
§ 9:42 Strict foreclosure
§ 9:43 Redemption

C. REMEDIES OF CONDITIONAL SELLER OR LESSOR (CONVENTION ARTICLE 10)

§ 9:44 Termination and possession
§ 9:45 De-registration and export
§ 9:46 Additional remedies

D. DEFAULT (CONVENTION ARTICLE 11)

§ 9:47 Meaning of “default”

E. ADDITIONAL REMEDIES (CONVENTION ARTICLE 12)

§ 9:48 Additional remedies

F. RELIEF PENDING FINAL DETERMINATION (CONVENTION ARTICLE 13)

§ 9:49 Interim relief
§ 9:50 Declarations concerning interim relief

G. PROCEDURAL REQUIREMENTS (CONVENTION ARTICLE 14)

§ 9:51 Procedure for exercise of remedies
§ 9:52 Remedies on insolvency

H. DEROGATION (CONVENTION ARTICLE 15)

§ 9:53 Modification of remedies
§ 9:54 Mandatory provisions
VI. THE INTERNATIONAL REGISTRATION SYSTEM

A. THE INTERNATIONAL REGISTRY (CONVENTION ARTICLE 16)

§ 9:55 Generally

B. WHAT CAN BE REGISTERED (CONVENTION ARTICLE 16)

§ 9:56 Generally
§ 9:57 International interests
§ 9:58 Prospective international interests
§ 9:59 Registrable non-consensual rights and interests
§ 9:60 Acquisitions of interests by assignment or subrogation
§ 9:61 Prospective assignments of international interests
§ 9:62 Notices of national interests
§ 9:63 Sales and prospective sales
§ 9:63.50 Pre-existing rights and interests
§ 9:64 Subordinations of interests
§ 9:65 Fractional shares

C. AMENDMENTS, EXTENSIONS, AND DISCHARGES (CONVENTION ARTICLE 16)

§ 9:66 Generally

D. THE SUPERVISORY AUTHORITY AND THE REGISTRAR (CONVENTION ARTICLE 17)

§ 9:67 The Supervisory Authority
§ 9:68 The registrar

E. OTHER MATTERS RELATING TO REGISTRATION (CONVENTION ARTICLES 18 TO 21)

§ 9:69 Miscellaneous provisions
§ 9:70 Designated entry points
§ 9:71 Validity of registration
§ 9:72 Time of registration

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 9:73 Search criteria
§ 9:74 Consent to registration
§ 9:75 Duration of registration

F. SEARCHES AND SEARCH RESULTS
(CONVENTION ARTICLES 22 TO 24)
§ 9:76 Searches of the International Registry
§ 9:77 Forms of search results
§ 9:78 Search certificates
§ 9:79 Informational search listings
§ 9:80 Contracting State searches and search certificates
§ 9:81 Evidentiary value of certificates

G. DISCHARGE OF REGISTRATION
(CONVENTION ARTICLE 25)
§ 9:82 Who may discharge registration
§ 9:83 Duty to discharge registration
§ 9:84 Duty to discharge registration when obligations discharged
§ 9:85 Duty to discharge registration of prospective transactions
§ 9:86 Duty to discharge or amend improper or erroneous registration
§ 9:87 Consequences of failing to discharge registration

H. ACCESS TO THE INTERNATIONAL REGISTRY (CONVENTION ARTICLE 26)
§ 9:88 Generally

I. LEGAL PERSONALITY, PRIVILEGES, AND IMMUNITY OF THE SUPERVISORY AUTHORITY (CONVENTION ARTICLE 27)
§ 9:89 Legal personality of the Supervisory Authority
§ 9:90 Privileges and immunity of the Supervisory Authority

J. LIABILITY OF THE REGISTRAR
(CONVENTION ARTICLE 28)
§ 9:91 Generally
§ 9:92 Insurance against liability
### VII. PRIORITY OF INTERESTS (CONVENTION ARTICLE 29)

- § 9:93 Priority of registered interest
- § 9:94 Priority of buyer
- § 9:95 Priority of lessor’s international interest
- § 9:96 Priority of lessee’s interest under leasing agreement
- § 9:97 Priority of rights under title reservation agreement
- § 9:98 Subordination
- § 9:99 Fractional shares
- § 9:100 Priority in proceeds
- § 9:101 Accessions

### VIII. EFFECTS OF INSOLVENCY (CONVENTION ARTICLE 30)

- § 9:102 Effect of insolvency proceedings
- § 9:103 Enforcement on debtor’s insolvency
- § 9:104 Primary insolvency jurisdiction
- § 9:105 Insolvency assistance

### IX. ASSIGNMENTS OF ASSOCIATED RIGHTS (CONVENTION ARTICLES 31 TO 38)

- § 9:106 Application of the Convention to assignments of associated rights
- § 9:107 Assignee’s priority
- § 9:108 Debtor’s defenses against assignee
- § 9:109 Revesting of associated rights
- § 9:110 Formal requirements for assignment
- § 9:111 Assignment of international interest without related associated rights
- § 9:112 Debtor’s duty to pay assignee
- § 9:113 Debtor’s defenses against an assignee
- § 9:114 Remedies of assignee upon assignor’s default
- § 9:115 Remedies of assignee under assignment for security
- § 9:116 Remedies of assignee under outright assignment
- § 9:117 Priority of competing assignments
- § 9:118 Effect of insolvency proceedings on assignments
- § 9:119 Limitations on assignee’s priority
- § 9:120 Effect of assignor’s insolvency proceedings on assignments

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 9:121 Subrogation

X. NON-CONSENSUAL RIGHTS AND INTERESTS; SALES (CONVENTION ARTICLES 39 TO 41)

A. DECLARATIONS WITH RESPECT TO NON-CONSENSUAL RIGHTS AND INTERESTS

§ 9:122 Non-consensual rights and interests having priority
§ 9:123 Right to arrest or detain an object
§ 9:124 Registrable non-consensual rights and interests

B. SALES

§ 9:125 Application of the Convention to sales and prospective sales

XI. JURISDICTION (CONVENTION ARTICLES 42 TO 45)

§ 9:126 Jurisdiction over Convention-based claims
§ 9:127 Jurisdiction to grant interim relief
§ 9:128 Jurisdiction to make orders against Registrar
§ 9:129 Jurisdiction with respect to insolvency proceedings

XII. RELATIONSHIP OF THE CAPE TOWN CONVENTION WITH OTHER CONVENTIONS (CONVENTION ARTICLES 45BIS AND 46)

§ 9:130 Relationship of the Cape Town Convention with the U.N. Receivables Convention
§ 9:131 Relationship of the Cape Town Convention with the UNIDROIT Convention on International Financial Leasing
§ 9:132 Relationship of the Cape Town Convention with the Geneva Convention of 1948
§ 9:133 Relationship of the Cape Town Convention with the Rome Convention
XIII. SIGNATURE, RATIFICATION, AND ENTRY INTO FORCE (CONVENTION ARTICLES 47 TO 49)
§ 9:134 Signature, ratification, acceptance, approval and accession
§ 9:135 Regional Economic Integration Organizations
§ 9:136 Entry into force

XIV. INTERNAL TRANSACTIONS (CONVENTION ARTICLE 50)
§ 9:137 Generally

XV. FUTURE PROTOCOLS (CONVENTION ARTICLE 51)
§ 9:138 Generally

XVI. DECLARATIONS, RESERVATIONS, DENUNCIATIONS (CONVENTION ARTICLES 52 TO 59)
§ 9:139 Territorial units
§ 9:140 Declaration regarding courts
§ 9:141 Declaration regarding remedies—Lease of object by chargee
§ 9:142 —Leave of court necessary
§ 9:143 Declarations regarding interim relief
§ 9:144 Declarations generally
§ 9:145 Reservations
§ 9:146 Subsequent declarations
§ 9:147 Withdrawal of declarations
§ 9:148 Denunciations

XVII. PRE-EXISTING RIGHTS AND INTERESTS (CONVENTION ARTICLE 60)
§ 9:149 Priority of pre-existing rights and interests

XVIII. FUTURE OF THE CONVENTION (CONVENTION ARTICLE 61)
§ 9:150 Generally


XIX. ROLE OF THE DEPOSITARY  
(CONVENTION ARTICLE 62)  
§ 9:151 Generally  
Appendix 9–A. Convention on International Interests in  
Mobile Equipment and Protocol to  
Convention on International Interests  
in Mobile Equipment  

CHAPTER 10. UNITED NATIONS  
CONVENTION ON THE INTERNATIONAL  
SALE OF GOODS  

I. INTRODUCTION  
§ 10:1 Introduction to the United Nations Convention on  
the International Sale of Goods  
§ 10:2 Attributes of CISG  
§ 10:3 CISG Case law  
§ 10:4 Implementation of CISG in the United States  
§ 10:5 The Importance of CISG to U.S. Lawyers  
§ 10:6 Avoiding CISG  
§ 10:7 CISG does not stand alone  
§ 10:8 Structure of CISG: Overview  

II. BASIC RULES OF APPLICABILITY  
§ 10:9 Application of CISG: Introduction  
§ 10:10 Basic rule of applicability of CISG: Article 1  
§ 10:11 Basic rule of applicability of CISG: Further  
considerations in relation to CISG Article  
1(1)(a)  
§ 10:12 Basic rule of applicability of CISG: Further  
considerations in relation to CISG Article  
1(1)(b)  

III. COVERAGE OF AND EXCLUSIONS OF  
TRANSACTIONS IN CISG  
§ 10:13 Contracts governed by CISG: Included  
Transactions  
§ 10:14 Contracts governed by CISG: Excluded  
Transactions  
§ 10:15 Contracts governed by CISG: What are goods; in  
general  

ccl
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 10:16 Contracts governed by CISG: Mixed sales of goods and services

IV. ISSUES EXCLUDED FROM CISG

§ 10:17 Contract Formation and Exclusion of Issues: Introduction; Burden of Proof Issue
§ 10:18 Exclusion of Issues: Validity
§ 10:19 Exclusion of Issues: Property
§ 10:20 Exclusion of Other Issues

V. CHOICE OF CISG, OR NOT, BY CONTRACT; INTERPRETING CISG

§ 10:21 Contracting out of CISG
§ 10:22 Contracting into CISG
§ 10:23 Interpretation of CISG
§ 10:24 Filling gaps in CISG
§ 10:25 Interpretation of the Action of Parties: Subjective Intent
§ 10:26 Interpretation of the Action of Parties: Objective Rule
§ 10:27 Interpretation of the Action of Parties: Relevant Circumstances

VI. CONTRACT FORMATION AND FORM

§ 10:28 The offer: introduction
§ 10:29 The offer: basic rules
§ 10:30 The offer: effectiveness and revocation
§ 10:31 Acceptance of an offer: basic rules
§ 10:32 Battle of the forms
§ 10:33 Acceptances: timing rules
§ 10:34 When a contract is concluded
§ 10:35 Course of performance, course of dealing, and usage of trade
§ 10:36 Form requirements
§ 10:37 Modification and termination of the contract

VII. OBLIGATIONS OF THE SELLER: DELIVERY

§ 10:38 Seller’s obligation of delivery: in general
§ 10:39 Delivery of the goods: places and methods
§ 10:40 Timing of delivery

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
§ 10:41 Delivery of documents

VIII. RIGHTS AND OBLIGATIONS OF THE SELLER: QUALITY AND QUANTITY OF GOODS AND FREEDOM FROM CLAIMS TO GOODS

§ 10:42 Seller's obligations: quality and quantity of goods
§ 10:43 Seller's obligations: evidence to establish
§ 10:44 Cure
§ 10:45 Inspection
§ 10:46 Notice of non-conformity
§ 10:47 Excuse for lack of notice: seller's knowledge
§ 10:48 Excuse for lack of notice: other reasonable excuse
§ 10:49 Third party claims

IX. OBLIGATIONS OF THE BUYER

§ 10:50 Obligations of the buyer: general rule
§ 10:51 Obligations of the buyer: payment of the price
§ 10:52 Obligations of the buyer: place to pay and when to pay
§ 10:53 Obligations of the buyer: taking delivery

X. PRELUDE TO REMEDIES: BREACH AND FUNDAMENTAL BREACH; EXCUSES OF PERFORMANCE

§ 10:54 Breach and fundamental breach
§ 10:55 Breach in installment contracts
§ 10:56 Anticipatory and quasi-anticipatory breach
§ 10:57 Excuse of performance due to impediments: basic rules
§ 10:58 Excuse of performance due to impediments: third party fault, notice, consequences of excuse, and variance by agreement
§ 10:59 Excuse of performance due to avoidance: basic rules
§ 10:60 Excuse of performance due to avoidance: restitutionary recovery allowed
§ 10:61 Excuse of performance due to avoidance: restitutionary recovery disallowed
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ 10:62 Excuse of performance: loss of excuse arising from other party's non-performance
§ 10:63 Excuse of performance: limitation on consequences of loss of right in case of avoidance

XI. REMEDIES OF BUYERS: OTHER THAN DAMAGES

§ 10:64 Non-damages remedies of the buyer: in general
§ 10:65 Non-damages remedies of the buyer: actual performance
§ 10:66 Non-damages remedies of the buyer: right to fix reasonable time for performance
§ 10:67 Non-damages remedies of the buyer: price reduction
§ 10:68 Non-damages remedies of the buyer: refusal
§ 10:69 Non-damages remedies of the buyer: avoidance, basic rules
§ 10:70 Non-damages remedies of the buyer: avoidance, summation

XII. REMEDIES OF SELLERS: OTHER THAN DAMAGES

§ 10:71 Non-damages remedies of the seller: in general
§ 10:72 Non-damages remedies of the seller: actual performance
§ 10:73 Non-damages remedies of the seller: seller self-help
§ 10:74 Non-damages remedies of the seller: avoidance

XIII. BUYER’S AND SELLER’S DAMAGES REMEDIES

§ 10:75 Buyer’s and seller’s damages remedies: basic rules
§ 10:76 Buyer’s and seller’s damages remedies: undesignated types of losses covered
§ 10:77 Buyer’s and seller’s damages remedies: lost profits
§ 10:78 Buyer’s and seller’s damages remedies: cover and resale
§ 10:79 Buyer’s and seller’s damages remedies: contract/market difference

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018

ccli iii
§ 10:80  Buyer’s and seller’s damages remedies: mitigation of damages
§ 10:81  Buyer’s and seller’s damages remedies: interest recovery
§ 10:82  Buyer’s and seller’s damages remedies: return of benefits to seller
§ 10:83  Buyer’s and seller’s damages remedies: preservation of goods

XIV. RISK OF LOSS
§ 10:84  Risk of loss: basic rules
§ 10:85  Risk of loss: consequences of risk on buyer
§ 10:86  Risk of loss: passage in transit cases
§ 10:87  Risk of loss: goods not in transit

MODEL TRIBAL SECURED TRANSACTIONS ACT

PART 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS
Sec. RMTSTA 9-101  Short Title
§ RMTSTA 9-101:1  Implementation Guide and Commentary: Prefatory Material
§ RMTSTA 9-101:2  Developments Related to Adoption, Utilization, and Promotion of the MTSTA
§ RMTSTA 9-101:2.50  Proposal for a National Tribal Filing System
§ RMTSTA 9-101:3  Generally
§ RMTSTA 9-101:4  Terminology
§ RMTSTA 9-101:5  Scope
§ RMTSTA 9-101:6  Subordination to other laws protecting consumers and obligors
§ RMTSTA 9-101:7  Attachment and enforceability
§ RMTSTA 9-101:8  Perfection
§ RMTSTA 9-101:9  Priorities
§ RMTSTA 9-101:10  Rights of third parties, generally
§ RMTSTA 9-101:11  Rules governing perfection by filing
§ RMTSTA 9-101:12  Foreclosure
§ RMTSTA 9-101:13  Special rules not reflected in revised U.C.C. Article 9
§ RMTSTA 9-101:14  Rules different from revised U.C.C. Article 9 to reflect tribal policy

Sec. RMTSTA 9-102  No Waiver of Sovereign Immunity
## Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-102:1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-102:2</td>
<td>Requirements for effective waiver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. RMTSTA 9-103</td>
<td>Purpose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-103:1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. RMTSTA 9-104</td>
<td>No Application to Property Not Alienable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-104:1</td>
<td>Overview; federal restrictions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. RMTSTA 9-105</td>
<td>[Reserved.]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. RMTSTA 9-106</td>
<td>Definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-106:1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-106:2</td>
<td>Omitted revised Article 9 terms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-106:3</td>
<td>Terms imported from other articles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-106:4</td>
<td>New definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-106:5</td>
<td>Modified Article 9 definitions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-106:6</td>
<td>Liberal construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. RMTSTA 9-107</td>
<td>Notice; Knowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-107:1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. RMTSTA 9-108</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-108:1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. RMTSTA 9-109</td>
<td>Lease Distinguished from Security Interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-109:1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. RMTSTA 9-110</td>
<td>General Scope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-110:1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. RMTSTA 9-111</td>
<td>Excluded Transactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-111:1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. RMTSTA 9-112</td>
<td>Administration of [Act]; Authority to Promulgate Regulations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-112:1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. RMTSTA 9-113</td>
<td>Obligation of Good Faith</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-113:1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. RMTSTA 9-114</td>
<td>Course of Performance, Course of Dealing, and Usage of Trade</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-114:1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. RMTSTA 9-115</td>
<td>Purchase-Money Security Interest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-115:1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. RMTSTA 9-116</td>
<td>Sufficiency of Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-116:1</td>
<td>Overview</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-116:2</td>
<td>Generic and supergeneric collateral descriptions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sec. RMTSTA 9-117</td>
<td>Parties’ Power to Choose Applicable Law</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-117:1</td>
<td>Overview; choice of law not a waiver of sovereign immunity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>§ RMTSTA 9-117:2</td>
<td>Circumstances in which parties may not choose governing law</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 cclv
PART 2 EFFECTIVENESS, ATTACHMENT AND RIGHTS OF PARTIES

Sec. RMTSTA 9-201 General Effectiveness of Security Agreement

§ RMTSTA 9-201:1 Overview

Sec. RMTSTA 9-202 Attachment and Enforceability of Security Interest; Proceeds; Formal Requisites

§ RMTSTA 9-202:1 Overview

Sec. RMTSTA 9-203 After-Acquired Collateral; Future Advances

§ RMTSTA 9-203:1 Overview

Sec. RMTSTA 9-204 Rights and Duties When Collateral Is in Secured Party's Possession or Control

§ RMTSTA 9-204:1 Overview

Sec. RMTSTA 9-205 Additional Duties of Certain Secured Parties

§ RMTSTA 9-205:1 Overview

Sec. RMTSTA 9-206 No Interest Retained in Right to Payment that is Sold; Retained Power of Seller of Account or Chattel Pape

Sec. RMTSTA 9-207 Request for Accounting; Request Regarding List of Collateral or Statement of Account

§ RMTSTA 9-207:1 Overview

PART 3 PERFECTION AND PRIORITY

SUBPART 1. LAW GOVERNING PERFECTION AND PRIORITY

Sec. RMTSTA 9-301 Law Governing Perfection and Priority of Security Interests

§ RMTSTA 9-301:1 Overview; revised UCC Article 9 rules regarding law governing perfection and priority

§ RMTSTA 9-301:2 RMTSTA rules governing perfection and priority, generally

§ RMTSTA 9-301:3 Exceptions to RMTSTA's general rule

Sec. RMTSTA 9-302 [Reserved.]

Sec. RMTSTA 9-303 Law Governing Perfection and Priority of Goods Covered by a Certificate of Title

§ RMTSTA 9-303:1 Overview

Sec. RMTSTA 9-304 [Reserved.]

Sec. RMTSTA 9-305 [Reserved.]

Sec. RMTSTA 9-306 [Reserved.]

Sec. RMTSTA 9-307 [Reserved.]
TABLE OF CONTENTS

SUBPART 2. PERFECTION
Sec. RMTSTA 9-308 When Security Interest or Agricultural Lien Is Perfected; Continuity of Perfection
§ RMTSTA 9-308:1 Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-309 Security Interest Perfected Upon Attachment
§ RMTSTA 9-309:1 Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-310 When Filing Required to Perfect Security Interest or Agricultural Lien; Security Interests and Agricultural Liens to Which Filing Provisions Do Not Apply
§ RMTSTA 9-310:1 Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-311 Perfection of Security Interests in Property Subject to Certain Statutes, Regulations, and Treaties
§ RMTSTA 9-311:1 Overview
§ RMTSTA 9-311:2 Perfection by compliance with enacting tribe's certificate-of-title law
Sec. RMTSTA 9-312 Perfection of Security Interests in Chattel Paper, Documents, Goods Covered by Documents, Instruments, and Money; Perfection by Permissive Filing; Temporary Perfection Without Filing or Transfer of Possession
§ RMTSTA 9-312:1 Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-313 When Possession by Secured Party Perfects Security Interest Without Filing
§ RMTSTA 9-313:1 Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-314 Perfection by Control
§ RMTSTA 9-314:1 Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-315 Secured Party's Rights on Disposition of Collateral and in Proceeds
§ RMTSTA 9-315:1 Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-316 Continued Perfection of Security Interest Following Change in Governing Law
§ RMTSTA 9-316:1 Overview

SUBPART 3. PRIORITY
Sec. RMTSTA 9-317 Interests That Take Priority Over Security Interest or Agricultural Lien
§ RMTSTA 9-317:1 Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-318 Particular Priority Rules
§ RMTSTA 9-318:1 Overview

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018  cclvii
Sec. RMTSTA 9-319  Priority of Security Interests in Fixtures and Crops
§ RMTSTA 9-319:1  Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-320  Accessions
§ RMTSTA 9-320:1  Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-321  Commingled Goods
§ RMTSTA 9-321:1  Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-322  Priority of Security Interest in Goods Covered by Certificate of Title
§ RMTSTA 9-322:1  Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-323  Priority Subject to Subordination
§ RMTSTA 9-323:1  Overview

PART 4 RIGHTS OF THIRD PARTIES
Sec. RMTSTA 9-401  Alienability of Debtor’s Rights
§ RMTSTA 9-401:1  Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-402  Secured Party Not Obligated on Contract of Debtor or in Tort
§ RMTSTA 9-402:1  Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-403  Rights of Assignee
§ RMTSTA 9-403:1  Overview
§ RMTSTA 9-403:2  Waiver-of-defenses clause; assignee’s right to payment
§ RMTSTA 9-403:3  Implementing FTC policy protecting consumer account debtors
§ RMTSTA 9-403:4  Effect of notification of assignment
§ RMTSTA 9-403:5  Effect of post-assignment modification
Sec. RMTSTA 9-404  Restrictions on Assignment
§ RMTSTA 9-404:1  Overview

PART 5 FILING
Sec. RMTSTA 9-501  Acceptance, Refusal, and Effectiveness of Financing Statement; Administration
§ RMTSTA 9-501:1  Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-502  Content of Records; Authorization; Lapse; Continuation; Termination
§ RMTSTA 9-502:1  Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-503  Claim Concerning Inaccurate or Wrongfully Filed Record
PART 6 DEFAULT

SUBPART 1. DEFAULT AND ENFORCEMENT
OF SECURITY INTEREST OR AGRICULTURAL LIEN

Sec. RMTSTA 9-601 Rights After Default; Judicial Enforcement; Consignor or Buyer of Accounts, Chattel Paper, Payment Intangibles, or Promissory Notes

§ RMTSTA 9-601:1 Overview

Sec. RMTSTA 9-602 Waiver and Variance of Rights and Duties

§ RMTSTA 9-602:1 Overview

Sec. RMTSTA 9-603 Agreement on Standards Concerning Rights and Duties

§ RMTSTA 9-603:1 Overview

Sec. RMTSTA 9-604 Procedure if Security Agreement Covers Real Property or Fixtures

§ RMTSTA 9-604:1 Overview

Sec. RMTSTA 9-605 Unknown Debtor or Secondary Obligor

§ RMTSTA 9-605:1 Overview

Sec. RMTSTA 9-606 Time of Default from Agricultural Lien

Sec. RMTSTA 9-607 Collection and Enforcement by Secured Party

§ RMTSTA 9-607:1 Overview

Sec. RMTSTA 9-608 Application of Proceeds of Collection or Enforcement; Liability for Deficiency and Right to Surplus

§ RMTSTA 9-608:1 Overview

Sec. RMTSTA 9-609 Secured Party's Limited Right to Take Possession After Default

§ RMTSTA 9-609:1 Overview

§ RMTSTA 9-609:2 Self-help repossession; necessity of consent by debtor after default

§ RMTSTA 9-609:3 Powers to be exercised by the secured party

§ RMTSTA 9-609:4 Powers to be exercised by the secured party—repossession

§ RMTSTA 9-609:5 Effect of agreement on standards governing breach of the peace

Sec. RMTSTA 9-610 Disposition of Collateral After Default

§ RMTSTA 9-610:1 Overview

Sec. RMTSTA 9-611 Notification Before Disposition of Collateral

§ RMTSTA 9-611:1 Overview

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018
Sec. RMTSTA 9-612   Timeliness of Notification Before Disposition of Collateral
§ RMTSTA 9-612:1   Overview
§ RMTSTA 9-612:2   Safe-harbor period for consumer transactions
Sec. RMTSTA 9-613   Contents and Form of Notification Before Disposition of Collateral
§ RMTSTA 9-613:1   Overview
§ RMTSTA 9-613:2   Contents of notification; savings provisions
Sec. RMTSTA 9-614   [Reserved.]
Sec. RMTSTA 9-615   Application of Proceeds of Disposition; Liability for Deficiency and Right to Surplus
§ RMTSTA 9-615:1   Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-616   Explanation of Calculation of Surplus or Deficiency
§ RMTSTA 9-616:1   Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-617   Rights of Transferee of Collateral
§ RMTSTA 9-617:1   Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-618   Rights and Duties of Certain Secondary Obligors
§ RMTSTA 9-618:1   Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-619   Transfer of Record or Legal Title
§ RMTSTA 9-619:1   Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-620   Acceptance of Collateral in Full or Partial Satisfaction of Obligation; Notification of Proposal; Effect of Acceptance; Compulsory Disposition of Consumer Goods
§ RMTSTA 9-620:1   Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-621   [Reserved.]
Sec. RMTSTA 9-622   [Reserved.]
Sec. RMTSTA 9-623   Right to Redeem Collateral
§ RMTSTA 9-623:1   Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-624   Waiver
§ RMTSTA 9-624:1   Overview

SUBPART 2. NONCOMPLIANCE WITH [ACT]
Sec. RMTSTA 9-625   Remedies for Secured Party’s Failure to Comply with [Act]
§ RMTSTA 9-625:1   Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-626   Action in Which Deficiency or Surplus Is in Issue
TABLE OF CONTENTS

§ RMTSTA 9-626:1 Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-627 Determination of Whether Conduct Was Commercially Reasonable
§ RMTSTA 9-627:1 Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-628 Nonliability and Limitation of Liability of Secured Party; Liability of Secondary Obligor
§ RMTSTA 9-628:1 Overview
Sec. RMTSTA 9-629 Attorney's Fees in Certain Transactions
§ RMTSTA 9-629:1 Overview

PART 7 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
Sec. RMTSTA 9-701 Severability
Sec. RMTSTA 9-702 Effective Date

Appendix A. Secured Transactions Filing Regulation
Appendix B. Revised Implementation Guide Sections V Through VIII

Volume 11

APPENDIX A1 PEB COMMENTARIES ON THE UNIFORM COMMERCIAL CODE

COMMENTARIES 1–7 FINAL DRAFT

PEB RESOLUTION ON PURPOSES, STANDARDS AND PROCEDURES FOR PEB COMMENTARY TO THE UCC

PEB COMMENTARY NO. 1 SECTION 2-507(2)
PEB COMMENTARY NO. 2 SECTION 9-301(4)
PEB COMMENTARY NO. 3 SECTIONS 9-306(2) AND 9-402(7)
PEB COMMENTARY NO. 4 SECTION 8-207(1)
PEB COMMENTARY NO. 5 SECTION 9-306(5)
PEB COMMENTARY NO. 6 SECTION 9-301(1)

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018 cclxi
PEB COMMENTARY NO. 7 THE RELATIVE PRIORITIES OF SECURITY INTERESTS IN THE CASH PROCEEDS OF ACCOUNTS, CHATTEL PAPER, AND GENERAL INTANGIBLES

COMMENTARY NO. 8 FINAL DRAFT

PEB COMMENTARY NO. 8 (AS AMENDED TO APPLY TO REVISED ARTICLE 9) SECTION 9-330

COMMENTARY NO. 9 FINAL DRAFT

PEB COMMENTARY NO. 9 SECTION 9-306(1)

COMMENTARY NO. 10 (SECTION 1-203) FINAL DRAFT

PEB COMMENTARY NO. 10 SECTION 1-203

COMMENTARY NO. 11 (SURETYSHIP ISSUES UNDER SECTIONS 3-116, 3-305, 3-415, 3-419, AND 3-605) FINAL DRAFT

PEB COMMENTARY NO. 11 (AS AMENDED TO APPLY TO REVISED ARTICLE 9) SURETYSHIP ISSUES UNDER SECTIONS 3-116, 3-305, 3-415, 3-419, AND 3-605

COMMENTARY NO. 12 (SECTION 9-302) FINAL DRAFT

PEB COMMENTARY NO. 12 SECTION 9-302

COMMENTARY NO. 13 (THE PLACE OF ARTICLE 4A IN A WORLD OF ELECTRONIC FUNDS TRANSFERS) FINAL DRAFT

PEB COMMENTARY NO. 13 THE PLACE OF ARTICLE 4A IN A WORLD OF ELECTRONIC FUNDS TRANSFERS

cclxii
# Table of Contents

COMMENTARY NO. 14 (SECTION 9-102(1)(B))
FINAL DRAFT

PEB COMMENTARY NO. 14 SECTION 9-102(1)(B)

COMMENTARY NO. 15 ELECTRONIC FILING UNDER ARTICLE 9 FINAL DRAFT

COMMENTARY NO. 16 SECTIONS 4A-502(D) AND 4A-503 FINAL DRAFT

PEB COMMENTARY NO. 16 SECTIONS 4A-502(D) AND 4A-503

PEB COMMENTARY NO. 17 SECTION 9-102

PEB COMMENTARY NO. 18 SECTION 8-102(A)(15)

PEB COMMENTARY NO. 19 HAGUE SECURITIES CONVENTION’S EFFECT ON DETERMINING THE APPLICABLE LAW FOR INDIRECTLY HELD SECURITIES

PEB COMMENTARY NO. 19 HAGUE SECURITIES CONVENTION’S EFFECT ON DETERMINING THE APPLICABLE LAW FOR INDIRECTLY HELD SECURITIES

SURVEYS

Appendix B1.  PERFECTING SECURITY INTERESTS  0020 SURVEYS 18

Appendix B2.  PERFECTING SECURITY INTERESTS (TABLE OF STATUTES) 0020 SURVEYS 18

Appendix C1.  UNIFORM ELECTRONIC TRANSACTIONS ACT 0015 SURVEYS 13

Appendix C2.  UNIFORM ELECTRONIC TRANSACTIONS ACT (TABLE OF STATUTES) 0015 SURVEYS 13

© 2018 Thomson Reuters, 12/2018  cclxiii
Appendix D1. GIFT CARDS AND GIFT CERTIFICATES
0015 SURVEYS 20

Appendix D2. GIFT CARDS AND GIFT CERTIFICATES
(TABLE OF STATUTES) 0015
SURVEYS 20